

Christine House | John Stevens

# **GRAMÁTICA PRÁTICA DE INGLÊS**

## **GRAMMAR NO PROBLEM**

**Uma gramática  
do Inglês atual  
com exercícios  
e respostas**

**Cornelsen**



**DISAL**  
EDITORA

Os tempos

1	Simple present	6
2	Present continuous	8
3	Simple present versus present continuous (1)	10
4	Simple present versus present continuous (2)	12
5	Simple past	14
6	Past continuous	16
7	Present perfect	18
8	Present perfect versus simple past (1)	20
9	Present perfect com <i>since</i> e <i>for</i>	22
10	Present perfect versus simple past (2)	24
11	Present perfect continuous (1)	26
12	Present perfect continuous (2)	28
13	Past perfect	30
14	Resumo: forma contínua e forma simples	32
15	Future (1): <i>will</i>	34
16	Future (2): <i>going to</i> , present continuous e simple present	36
17	Future (3): <i>will</i> + future continuous, future perfect	38

Perguntas

18	Perguntas (1): perguntas de "sim" ou "não" e respostas curtas	40
19	Perguntas (2): perguntas <i>wh-</i> com ou sem <i>do</i> ou com preposição	42
20	Perguntas (3): question tags	44

Voz ativa e voz passiva

21	A voz passiva (1)	46
22	A voz passiva (2)	48

Modal verbs

23	Modal verbs (1): <i>can</i>	50
24	Modal verbs (2): <i>must</i>	52
25	Modal verbs (3): <i>may, might, could</i>	54

Gerúndio e infinitivo

26	Gerúndio (1): verbo + <i>...ing</i>	56
27	Gerúndio (2): preposição + <i>...ing</i>	58
28	Infinitivo	60
29	Verbo + objeto + infinitivo	62
30	<i>used to</i> / <i>be used to</i> / <i>get used to</i>	64

<b>Orações subordinadas</b>	
31 Orações adjetivas (1)	66
32 Orações adjetivas (2)	68
33 Conditional I	70
34 Conditional II	72
35 Conditional III	74
<b>Discurso indireto</b>	
36 Discurso indireto (1)	76
37 Discurso indireto (2)	78
<b>Pronomes e verbos reflexivos</b>	
38 Pronomes e verbos reflexivos	80
<b>Adjetivos e advérbios</b>	
39 Adjetivos e advérbios	82
40 Graus dos adjetivos e advérbios	84
41 Posição dos advérbios	86
<b>Substantivos</b>	
42 Substantivos (1): incontáveis	88
43 Substantivos (2): singular e plural	90
<b>Artigos e pronomes</b>	
44 <i>some – any</i>	92
45 <i>much – many – a lot; each – every; most; none – nobody – nothing; enough</i>	94
46 <i>all – everybody – everything; both – the two – either – neither</i>	96
47 O artigo definido <i>the</i>	98
48 O artigo indefinido <i>a/an</i>	100
<b>Espaço para anotações</b>	102
<b>Peculiaridades gramaticais do inglês americano</b>	103
<b>Índice remissivo de A a Z</b>	104
<b>Termos gramaticais ingleses e sua tradução para o português</b>	110
<b>Peculiaridades ortográficas</b>	111
<b>Caderno de respostas</b>	113



# 1 Simple present

A: Where's Jim this morning?

B: He ~~work~~ <sup>works</sup> on Saturdays.

A: Oh.

B: Well, in the morning, He ~~works~~ <sup>doesn't work</sup> in the afternoon.

A: Can I phone him?

B: Yes. ~~Know you~~ <sup>Do you know</sup> his phone number?

## Forma

- he/she/it com -s      Ann loves music. She plays the piano. *Ann adora música. Ela toca piano.*
- Negação com don't e doesn't      I don't work on Mondays. *Não trabalho às segundas-feiras.*  
Tom doesn't drink coffee, only tea. *Tom não toma café, apenas chá.*
- Negação com do e does      Do tourists spend much here? *Turistas gastam muito dinheiro aqui?*  
When does school start? At nine? *A que horas começam as aulas? Às nove?*
- Respostas curtas com do e does (+ not)      Do they know? – Yes, they do. / No, they don't. *Eles sabem? – Sim. / Não.*  
Does Ed eat meat? – Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't. *Ed come carne? – Sim. / Não.*

## Uso

- O simple present (presente simples) é utilizado para descrever uma situação duradoura.
- Fatos irrefutáveis      The sun goes down in the west. *O sol põe-se no oeste.*
- Hábitos      I usually leave the house at 7:15. *Geralmente saio de casa às 7h15.*
- Processos regulares      On Mondays banks open later. *Às segundas os bancos abrem mais tarde.*
- Costumes      In Spain people have supper later. *As pessoas jantam mais tarde na Espanha.*
- Indicação de profissão      My cousin works for Microsoft. *Minha prima trabalha na Microsoft.*
- Indicação de passatempos      My wife sings in a choir. *Minha mulher canta num coral.*

## Palavras sinalizadoras

- Expressões de frequência      always, usually, normally, mostly, often, sometimes, rarely, never, hardly ever, every day, every morning, every time
- Horários e períodos do dia      at six o'clock, in the morning, at breakfast time, before school, after work
- Dias da semana, meses, estações do ano, festas      on Monday(s), on weekdays, at the weekend, in June, in the summer, at Easter, before Christmas
- Posição: expressões de frequência (exceto aquelas com every) ficam em geral antes da última parte do verbo. Todas as outras (inclusive expressões com every) ficam no fim da frase.  
I don't often see Alan at work.      I see Ann every day / at lunch / on Monday.

Palavra sinalizadora **não** pode ficar entre o verbo e o objeto!

~~I buy always two newspapers.~~      I always buy two newspapers.  
~~I read every day two newspapers.~~      I read two newspapers every day.

## Resumo

- he/she/it com -s; perguntas/respostas com as formas de do
- Expressões de frequência (exceto every...); nenhuma palavra sinalizadora **entre** o verbo e o objeto!



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I doesn't like ice cream.  
b I don't like ice cream. ✓

- 1 a He lives in São Paulo.  
b He live in São Paulo.

- 2 a We don't like football.  
b We not like football.

- 3 a Where live you?  
b Where do you live?

**B Make negative sentences.**

I come from Austria.

I ~~don't~~ come from Austria.

- 1 I normally go to bed before 10 o'clock.  
2 This book teaches vocabulary.  
3 I go to work by train.  
4 We usually have an English lesson on Tuesday.  
5 My sisters live in Manchester.

- 4 a What means 'bicycle'?  
b What does 'bicycle' mean?

- 5 a I always start work at 8 o'clock.  
b I start always work at 8 o'clock.

- 6 a She doesn't usually work at weekends.  
b She doesn't work usually at weekends.

**Now ask questions.**

Where / you / come from?

Where ~~do you~~ come from?

- 6 What time / you / go to bed?  
7 What / this book / teach?  
8 How / you / go to work?  
9 When / you / usually have an English lesson?  
10 Where / your sisters / live?

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the correct form.**

A: I don't understand this letter. Can you help me?

B: I'm sorry. I ~~don't~~ *peak* (not speak) Spanish.

- 1 A: Where does your sister live?

B: She ..... (live) in America.

- 2 A: Excuse me. Where is the post office?

B: I'm sorry. I ..... (not know).

- 3 A: Can we meet on Saturday morning?

B: No, I'm afraid not. I .....  
(always work) on Saturdays.

- 4 A: What time is it, please?

B: I'm sorry. I ..... (not have) a watch.

- 5 A: Would you like a cigarette?

B: No, thanks. I ..... (not smoke).

- 6 A: Good morning. Can I speak to David, please?

B: No, I'm afraid he ..... (not work)  
here any more.

**D Give short answers.**

Do you live in São Paulo? – No, I ~~don't~~.

- 1 Does Ann still work for IBM? – No, .....  
2 Do you have much snow here? – Yes, .....  
3 Do your children like school? – No, .....  
4 Does your boss travel a lot? – Yes, .....  
5 Do you enjoy your work? Yes, .....  
6 Does your wife speak French? No, .....

**E Write questions for these answers.**

A: Where ~~do you~~ live? B: We live in Rio de Janeiro.

- 1 A: When ..... work?

B: I usually start work at 8.30.

- 2 A: How ..... to work?

B: Paul? He goes to work by train.

- 3 A: How many children .....?

B: They have two children.

- 4 A: How often ..... tennis?

B: We play tennis once a week.

- 5 A: What ..... at weekends?

B: At weekends? I often work in the garden.

## 2 Present continuous

- A: Are we all here? Where's Pete?  
~~isn't coming~~  
 B: He ~~is coming~~ not this week.  
 A: Oh, Why?  
~~is working~~  
 B: He ~~works~~ in Paris this week.  
 A: Oh, OK. Let's start the meeting then.  
~~are we discussing~~  
 B: What ~~discuss we~~ today?

### Forma

- Uma forma de **be + verbo** com o sufixo **-ing\*** Listen. Stan **is singing** in the bath. *Ouçá. Stan está cantando no banheiro.*  
 Leave me alone. I'm **working**. *Me deixe em paz. Estou trabalhando.*
- Negação: uma forma de **be + not** You **aren't** (= are not) listening. *Você não está escutando.*  
 The bus **isn't** (= is not) stopping. Hey! *O ônibus não está parando. Eh!*
- Formação de perguntas através de inversão **Ed is watching** TV. *Ed está assistindo à televisão.*  
**Is Ed watching** TV? – Yes, he **is**. / No, he **isn't**. *Ed está assistindo à televisão? – Sim. / Não.*

\* Peculiaridades ortográficas: veja página 111

### Uso

- O present continuous (presente contínuo) descreve um acontecimento momentâneo (ou seja, que está em curso no momento e ainda não terminou) ou uma situação passageira.

Acontecimento momentâneo

What are you **doing**? – I'm **repairing** this chair.  
*O que você está fazendo? – Estou consertando esta cadeira.*  
 Look! It's **snowing**. *Veja! Está nevando.*

Situação passageira

I'm on a diet, so I'm **eating** a lot of salad at the moment.  
*Estou fazendo regime, portanto eu como muita salada no momento.*  
 Ann's **working** in Berlin this week. *Esta semana, Ann está trabalhando em Berlim.*  
 Tom **is learning** Chinese. *Tom está estudando chinês.*

### Palavras sinalizadoras

- Advérbios que expressam "agora" now, at the moment, just
- Expressões adverbiais que designam tempo today, this week, this month, this year, this summer  
 inacabado

- Posição: **just** fica antes da última parte do verbo, mas todas as outras palavras sinalizadoras ficam no início ou no fim da frase. I am **just** making the tea. I'm not working **at the moment / today**.

Palavra sinalizadora **não** pode ficar entre o verbo e o objeto!

~~I am finishing just my supper.~~  
~~We are eating today fish.~~

I am just finishing my supper.  
 We are eating fish today.

### Resumo

- Uma forma de **be + verbo** com o sufixo **-ing**
- A ação/situação está acontecendo no momento / não está concluída / é passageira.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

a What you are reading?

b What are you reading? ✓

1 a My son isn't studying in Germany.

b My son is studying not in Germany.

2 a We are today talking about the new project.

b We are talking about the new project today.

3 a I'm just finishing the report.

b I'm finishing just the report.

4 a Take your umbrella. It raining.

b Take your umbrella. It's raining.

5 a Where you are going?

b Where are you going?

6 a This week are the children staying at home.

b This week the children are staying at home.

**B Make negative sentences.**

I'm learning French.

I'm **not** learning French.

1 I'm working in Belo Horizonte this week.

2 The children are watching Sesame Street.

3 The Pope is visiting Thailand at the moment.

4 We are working from 8 till 3 this week.

5 I'm learning English for fun.

**Now ask questions.**

What / you / learn?

What are you learning?

6 Where / you / work this week?

7 What / the children / watch?

8 Which country / the Pope / visit?

9 When / you / work this week?

10 Why / you / learn English?

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the correct form.**

A: You can't go out! You're ill.

B: It's all right. I'm **going** (go) to the doctor's.

1 A: What's your brother doing now?

B: He ..... (study) in America.

2 A: Hurry up or we'll miss the bus!

B: I'm sorry. I ..... (look for) my keys.

3 A: Can we play tennis on Saturday morning?

B: No, I'm afraid not. I ..... (work) on Saturdays this month.

4 A: ..... (you/wait) for the bus?

B: No. I ..... (wait) for a friend but she is late.

**D Give short answers.**

Are you enjoying the party? –

No, I'm **not**.

1 Is Carol working this weekend? –

Yes, .....

2 Are you still learning French? –

Yes, .....

3 Is it still snowing? –

No, .....

4 Are you both going home now? –

Yes, .....

**E Write questions for these answers.**A: What is Pete **studying**?

B: Pete is studying Economics.

1 A: Why ..... French?

B: Joe? He's learning it for fun.

2 A: Where ..... this week?

B: Jane? She's working in Hull.

3 A: Who ..... for?

B: I'm waiting for Thomas.

4 A: What time ..... ?

B: We're meeting at 10 o'clock.

### 3 Simple present versus present continuous (1)

A: OK, can you all sit down, please? The pizza is ready.

B: Mm. You ~~are always making~~ <sup>always make</sup> lovely pizzas, Jill.

A: Thanks, Ann. Red wine or white wine with it?

B: Usually I ~~am drinking~~ <sup>drink</sup> white, but today I'd like red.

A: OK. And you, Tom?

B: Water for him! He ~~drives~~ <sup>is driving</sup> tonight!

#### Simple present: estado permanente

■ O simple present descreve

1. processos regulares e repetitivos que formam determinada situação;
2. estados permanentes.

Fatos irrefutáveis:

I come from Germany.

Hábitos:

I don't eat much chocolate.

Processos regulares:

The cinema shows a lot of foreign films.

Costumes:

People don't celebrate Christmas in Japan.

Indicação de profissão:

She's a writer. She writes detective stories.

Indicação de passatempos:

Don plays a lot of tennis.

#### Present continuous: acontecimento momentâneo

■ O present continuous é utilizado para descrever

1. um único processo que está acontecendo no momento e ainda não acabou;
2. uma situação passageira.

Processos momentâneos:

Hello, Ann, I'm phoning from London.

What are you doing on the floor?

He isn't reading. Look, his eyes are shut.

We're waiting for Don. He has the key.

Situações passageiras:

Shall I meet you at your hotel? – No, I'm not staying at a hotel this time. I'm staying with friends.

The weather is so nice that I'm cycling to work this week.

Phil is playing a lot of tennis at the moment because he's trying to get fit again.

#### Comparação da forma simples com a forma contínua

Ann works for Siemens in Munich. → She is working on a new project now.

I don't usually enjoy parties. → But I'm enjoying this one.

It doesn't snow here much. → But it's snowing now.

At Tim's school they learn two foreign languages. → Tim is learning French and Spanish.

I usually get up at six. → This week I'm getting up late. I'm on holiday.

Uma situação profissional permanente é sempre descrita pela forma simples; uma situação passageira de aprendizagem ou formação é descrita pela forma contínua.

Don works for VW. He designs cars. → Don's daughter is a student. She is studying design. She is training to be a designer.

#### Resumo

- Simple present: algo acontece em determinados intervalos = situação/estado permanente.
- Present continuous: algo está acontecendo no momento da fala, está inacabado, é passageiro.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I'm coming from England – I was born in Bristol.  
b I come from England – I was born in Bristol. ✓
- 1 a I live in Curitiba. Where do you live?  
b I live in Curitiba. Where are you living?
- 2 a We are saving to buy a new car.  
b We save to buy a new car.
- 3 a My sister learns English for her job.  
b My sister is learning English for her job.
- 4 a I often watch English films.  
b I'm often watching English films.
- 5 a Their children never help at home.  
b Their children are never helping at home.
- 6 a My boss is travelling a lot at the moment.  
b My boss travels a lot at the moment.

**B What usually happens and what is happening today, this week ...?**

(usually) I / finish work at 5 o'clock

(this week) I / finish at 4 o'clock

I usually finish work at 5 o'clock. This week I'm finishing at 4 o'clock.

- 1 (usually) we / go shopping on Fridays  
(this week) we / go on Saturday
- 2 (always) John / go to work by car  
(today) he / go by bus because his car is at the garage
- 3 (sometimes) the children / visit their grandparents  
(this Sunday) they / stay at home
- 4 (this year) Jane / go to Australia for Christmas  
(often) she / spend Christmas abroad
- 5 (this week) I / not work on Friday  
(never) I / work on Mondays, so that means I can have a long weekend

**C Complete these dialogues. Put the verbs in the simple present or the present continuous.**

- 1 A: Would you like to come to the cinema this evening?  
B: I'm sorry, I can't. My sister ..... (stay) with us at the moment.  
A: How long ..... (she/stay)?
- 2 A: Hello, Sandra! Where ..... (you/go)?  
B: I ..... (go) to my evening class. I ..... (learn) Italian.  
A: Really? I ..... (go) to an Italian class once a week too.
- 3 A: ..... (you/normally/go) on holiday in the summer?  
B: Yes, we ..... (usually spend) a month in France, but this year we ..... (stay) here.  
A: Yes, this year we ..... (not go) on holiday, either.
- 4 A: Where ..... (your brother/work)?  
B: He ..... (work) for a big computer company. And your sister?  
A: She ..... (not work) at the moment. She's unemployed.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Não vamos viajar nas férias este ano, pois estamos nos mudando.  
2 Hoje está nevando muito. Normalmente não neva tanto assim em março.  
3 Meu irmão fala três línguas. Agora ele está aprendendo uma quarta: russo.  
4 O que você vai fazer este fim de semana? Você vai ficar em casa?  
5 Hoje à noite vamos a um restaurante vegetariano porque nossos amigos não comem carne.



A: Can we meet tonight?

B: Sorry I ~~am having~~ <sup>have</sup> no time today.

A: Tomorrow then? We could have a drink at the pub.

B: It ~~is depending~~ <sup>depends</sup> on the time. After nine is OK.

A: OK. 9.30 at the Crown? No, you don't like the Crown, do you?

B: Oh, now I'm ~~thinking~~ <sup>think</sup> it's quite nice, with the new owner.

### Verbos não usados na forma contínua

■ Verbos que não designam uma atividade não são usados na forma contínua.

Verbos que expressam necessidade, vontade ou gosto I need a drink. I want some beer. I like beer.

Verbos que expressam pensamento, saber ou opinião I think Ed is right, but I don't know. I believe him.

Verbos que expressam percepção sensorial Does that taste good? It smells funny.

Verbos que expressam qualidades ou estados This looks like Italian. What does it mean?

need *precisar*

want *querer*

wish *desejar*

like *gostar*

love *amar, adorar*

hate *odiar*

prefer *preferir*

think *pensar, achar*

know *saber, conhecer*

remember *lembrar*

understand *compreender*

believe *acreditar, achar*

realize *perceber*

see *compreender*

see *ver*

hear *ouvir*

feel *sentir, produzir*

smell *cheirar*

taste *ter gosto de*

be *ser, estar*

have *ter*

seem *parecer*

consist of *consistir em*

mean *significar*

belong to *pertencer a*

depend on *depende de*

! Alguns desses verbos têm mais de um significado, isto é, um significado designa um estado (a forma contínua não é possível) e o outro, uma atividade (a forma contínua é possível).

#### Estado: impossível a forma contínua

have I have no time now. (*ter*)  
Ann has a big family. (*ter*)  
We have a big double room. (*ter*)  
They have lots of money. (*ter*)  
Tom has an awful boss. (*ter*)

think What does Don think? (*pensar, achar*)  
We think the flat is small. (*pensar, achar*)

see Now I see where the hole is. Here. (*perceber*)  
I see what you're trying to say. (*compreender*)

look This building looks old. (*parecer*)

#### Atividade: forma contínua

I am having a bath/shower. (*tomar banho*)  
They are having lunch / a cup of tea. (*comer / beber*)  
We are having a nice time. (*divertir-se*)  
They are having a party again. (*fazer uma festa*)  
They are having an argument again. (*discutir*)

Quiet! He is thinking. (*refletir*)  
We are thinking of moving. (*pensar em*)

I am not seeing much of Jim at the moment. (*ver = encontrar*)  
We're seeing more online shopping than ever before. (*ver = presenciar*)

Ann is looking out of the window. (*olhar*)

### Resumo

- Verbos que expressam um estado e não uma ação não podem ser usados na forma contínua.
- Existem verbos com vários significados: ação = forma contínua; MAS estado = impossível a forma contínua.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a This book looks interesting. – Yes, it's really good. ✓  
 b This book is looking interesting. – Yes, it's really good.
- 1 a This wine tastes very strange.  
 b This wine is tasting very strange.
- 2 a What's the matter? What do you think about?  
 b What's the matter? What are you thinking about?
- 3 a I'm seeing Lynn this evening. It's her birthday.  
 b I see Lynn this evening. It's her birthday.
- 4 a You don't seem very happy. Are you OK?  
 b You aren't seeming very happy. Are you OK?
- 5 a My daughter doesn't want to go to the wedding.  
 b My daughter isn't wanting to go to the wedding.
- 6 a I'm sorry, she doesn't have time at the moment.  
 b I'm sorry, she isn't having time at the moment.

**B Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb.**

- think** I ~~am thinking~~ about our next holiday – it'll be great!  
 I **think** we should book our flights soon.
- 1 **look** What a fantastic garden you have! It ..... wonderful.  
 My wife loves roses – she ..... at your rose garden at the moment.
- 2 **see** Now I ..... what the problem is – I'll talk to Joe again.  
 I ..... him this week – we're on a course together.
- 3 **think** I'm worried about work. I ..... our firm may close.  
 I ..... of looking for a new job.
- 4 **have** Listen, Sue and Jack ..... another argument.  
 They ..... so many problems.

**C Complete these dialogues. Put the verbs in the simple present or the present continuous.**

- 1 A: What ..... (you/think)? Should we buy the red sofa or the blue one?  
 B: I ..... (prefer) the red one but it is too expensive.
- 2 A: What ..... (this word/mean)? I ..... (not understand) this sentence.  
 B: I ..... (not know) but I ..... (think) it's a kind of fruit.
- 3 A: Your sister ..... (not seem) very happy at the moment. Is she OK?  
 B: Yes, she's just tired. I ..... (see) her this evening to talk about a holiday.  
 We ..... (think) about a camping holiday in France.
- 4 A: ..... (you/remember) what time we are meeting Carol and Steve?  
 B: I'm not sure. I ..... (have) lunch with Carol today. I'll ask her.
- 5 A: I'm going shopping. .... (you/need) anything?  
 B: I ..... (just think). No, I ..... (not think) so, thanks.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Este livro não me pertence. Ele lhe pertence?  
 2 Estou refletindo sobre a pergunta de Ann. Acho que precisamos de mais tempo (para refletir).  
 3 Você tem tempo hoje à noite? – Isso depende de meu trabalho.  
 4 Por que você está olhando esse carro? – Porque ele é (to look) ótimo. Mas acho que é caro demais.  
 5 Tom ainda (still) está tomando café? – Não, acho que ele está pronto. Isso significa que podemos ir.



## 5 Simple past

- A: Did you <sup>go</sup> ~~went~~ to Angela's party <sup>two days ago</sup> ~~for two days~~?  
 B: Yes, it was great. But you weren't there.  
 A: I didn't <sup>have</sup> ~~had~~ time. Too much work.  
 B: That's a pity.  
 A: Jill said some people <sup>fell</sup> ~~felt~~ in the swimming pool. <sup>Were you</sup> ~~Did you be~~ one of them?  
 B: Me? Why do you think that?

### Forma

- Verbo be: was/were I was surprised: the others **were** older. *Eu fiquei surpreso: os outros eram mais velhos.*
- Verbos irregulares: forma infinitiva + -ed\* We **worked** hard yesterday. *Trabalhamos duro ontem.*  
The rain **stopped** at six. *A chuva parou às seis horas.*
- Verbos irregulares: formas especiais (veja abaixo) Tom **rang** earlier. *Tom telefonou mais cedo.*  
I **forgot** to tell you. *Eu me esqueci de lhe contar.*
- Negação: was/were + not ou didn't + infinitivo I **wasn't** here yesterday. *Não estive aqui ontem.*  
The neighbours **weren't** at home. *Os vizinhos não estavam em casa.*  
José **didn't** come last week. *José não veio na semana passada.*
- Perguntas e respostas curtas: verbo be: was/were ou did (+infinitivo) Where **was** Andy? *Onde Andy estava?*  
Were you here? – Yes, I **was**. / No, I **wasn't**. *Você esteve aqui? – Sim. / Não.*  
Did Ed **phone**? – Yes, he **did**. / No, he **didn't**. *Ed telefonou? – Sim. / Não.*

\* Peculiaridades ortográficas: veja página 111

### Verbos irregulares (veja a lista completa na orelha do livro/marcador de páginas)

be	was/were	fall	fell	go	went	make	made	stand	stood
buy	bought	feel	felt	grow	grew	meet	met	take	took
come	came	forget	forgot	have	had	ring	rang	tell	told
cost	cost	get	got	know	knew	say	said	think	thought
do	did	give	gave	leave	left	see	saw	write	wrote

### Uso e palavras sinalizadoras

- O simple past descreve estados e acontecimentos concluídos.
- Palavras sinalizadoras típicas designam um momento ou um tempo concluído no passado.  
 yesterday e last... yesterday, last week, last month, last year, last night, last Tuesday, last weekend  
 expressões com ago two hours ago, a few weeks ago, several months ago, ten years ago  
 when?, datas when?, (at) what time?, in 1998, on 28 December, in April

Palavras sinalizadoras ficam no fim ou no início da frase; **não** ficam entre o verbo e o objeto.

I saw Jill **last week**. (~~I saw last week Jill.~~)

ago fica sempre no fim do adjunto temporal: We met two days **ago** (~~for two days~~). ... há dois dias.

### Resumo

- Verbos regulares: -ed; verbos irregulares: formas especiais; perguntas e negações com did
- Uso: quando algum estado ou ação está concluído em determinado ponto do passado.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I didn't went to school yesterday.  
b I didn't go to school yesterday. ✓

- 1 a He bought his car for two years.  
b He bought his car two years ago.  
2 a We weren't at home last night.  
b We didn't be at home last night.  
3 a We stood in a lovely hotel last year.  
b We stayed in a lovely hotel last year.

**B Make negative sentences.**

I was at home yesterday.  
I ~~wasn't~~ at home yesterday.

- 1 I got up early yesterday.  
2 This jacket was expensive.  
3 Sam went to the USA last year.  
4 Judy rang Clive last week.

- 4 a What did you last weekend?  
b What did you do last weekend?  
5 a Julie fell downstairs last week.  
b Julie felt downstairs last week.

- 6 a Where was you born?  
b Where were you born?

**Now ask questions.**

Where / you / be yesterday?

Where were you yesterday?

- 5 What time / you / get up yesterday?  
6 How much / be / your jacket?  
7 Where / Sam / go last year?  
8 Who / Judy / ring last week?

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the correct form.**

A: What ~~did you do~~ (you/do) last Sunday?

B: I ~~visited~~ (visit) some old friends.

- 1 A: What ..... (your son/give) you for your birthday?

B: Nothing! He ..... (forget).

- 2 A: That's a nice pullover. Where ..... (you/buy) it?

B: I ..... (not buy) it. It ..... (be) a present.

- 3 A: I ..... (try) to call you yesterday but you ..... (not be) at work.

B: No, I ..... (stay) at home because I ..... (feel) ill.

- 4 A: ..... (you/have) a good weekend?

B: Lovely, thanks. We ..... (have) visitors on Saturday and on Sunday we  
..... (not do) anything.

- 5 A: What time ..... (you/get) home last night?

B: Late. We ..... (leave) at midnight and ..... (miss) the last bus.

**D Write questions for these answers.**

A: Where ~~did you grow up~~? B: I grew up in Perth.

- 1 A: When ..... this course?

B: This course? I started five years ago.

- 2 A: How much ..... ?

B: My coat? It cost £350.

- 3 A: ..... Tom at the party?

B: No, I didn't see him.

- 4 A: ..... by cheque?

B: No, I paid by credit card.

**E Give short answers.**

Did you phone Sue? – No, I ~~didn't~~.

- 1 Was Ann away last week? – No, .....

- 2 Did the taxi come on time? – Yes, .....

- 3 Were you born here? – No, .....

- 4 Did you go to the bank? – Yes, .....

- 5 Did Ed give you my message? – Yes, .....

- 6 Did you both work late? – No, .....



## 6 Past continuous

A: Did you have a good evening with Julie and Dave?

B: Not really. I left work late. And when I was driving to the restaurant, I ~~was having~~ <sup>had</sup> an accident.

A: Oh no! What happened?

B: A man in another car drove into me when I ~~waited~~ <sup>was waiting</sup> at some traffic lights.

A: Didn't he see you?

B: No, he ~~spoke~~ <sup>was speaking</sup> to someone on his mobile phone and ~~didn't concentrate~~ <sup>wasn't concentrating</sup> on the road.

### Forma

■ was/were ...ing

■ Negação

■ Perguntas e

respostas curtas

When Sandra came home, I was cooking and the children were helping me.

I wasn't watching TV. They weren't playing.

Were you cooking? – Yes, I was. Were the children playing? – No, they weren't.

### Uso

■ O past continuous descreve ações e processos ainda não concluídos que estavam acontecendo em determinado momento do passado.

Ações/processos não  
concluídos que  
estavam acontecendo

It was raining when I left the office. *Estava chovendo quando saí do escritório.*

We were still playing poker at 3 am. *Às três da madrugada ainda estávamos jogando pôquer.*

Tom was smoking when I saw him. *Tom estava fumando quando o vi.*

Situações passageiras

We were living with friends because our new flat wasn't ready. *Estávamos morando na casa de amigos porque nosso novo apartamento ainda não estava pronto.*

Ações contínuas

What were you doing in Tim's room all that time? – I was reading to him. *O que você estava fazendo no quarto de Tim o tempo todo? – Eu lia para ele.*

### Comparando a forma contínua com a forma simples

■ Frequentemente se usa a forma contínua quando uma situação foi interrompida por algo. A situação de "pano de fundo" fica na forma contínua; o acontecimento novo, na forma simples.

we were having supper



We were having supper when the phone rang.

I was standing at the traffic lights when the accident happened.

While we were waiting, it started to rain.

■ A forma simples é usada para falar de dois acontecimentos sucessivos.

A car stopped and a man got out.

Compare. When I went in, everybody was standing at the window. They were looking at something outside.

When I went in, everybody stood up. They all looked at me as if I came from Mars.

A forma contínua normalmente não é possível com verbos que indicam estado (veja unit 4).

When I last saw Tom he seemed (was seeming) very tired.

### Resumo

■ Uso: 1. "pano de fundo" interrompido; 2. situação duradoura por tempo limitado

■ Não se usa a forma contínua com verbos que indicam estado.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I didn't go to work yesterday. ✓  
 b I wasn't going to work yesterday.

- 1 a Dave arrived when I was washing up.  
 b Dave arrived when I washed up.  
 2 a Did the children wait when you got home?  
 b Were the children waiting when you got home?  
 3 a I tried to call you at six. What did you do?  
 b I tried to call you at six. What were you doing?  
 4 a When I was a child, I wanted to be a nurse.  
 b When I was a child, I was wanting to be a nurse.  
 5 a Julie was falling downstairs last week.  
 b Julie fell downstairs last week.  
 6 a Sorry, I wasn't listening. What did you say?  
 b Sorry, I didn't listen. What did you say?

**B Make questions and answers.**

What / you / do / when the children / come home? – I / watch TV.

What were you doing when the children came home? – I was watching TV.

- 1 Which country / the president / visit / when he / become ill? – He / visit Spain.  
 2 How fast / they / drive / when the accident / happen? – They / drive at 120 km an hour.  
 3 What / Helen / do / when she / meet her husband? – She / do research for her new book.  
 4 Who / John / speak to / when the secretary / walk in? – He / speak to his boss.  
 5 Where / the children / play / when the dog / attack them? – They / play in the park.

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the simple past or the past continuous.**

A: Guess who I met (meet) when I was standing (stand) at the bus stop.

B: No idea. Who did you meet (you/meet)?

- 1 A: ..... (it/rain) when you ..... (leave) home this morning?  
 B: Yes, but when I ..... (get) to work the sun ..... (shine).  
 2 A: Why ..... (you/switch) the television off?  
 B: Nobody ..... (watch) it and I ..... (want) to read.  
 3 A: ..... (you/phone) the travel agent's yesterday?  
 B: No, I'm afraid I ..... (forget). I ..... (remember) when I  
 ..... (wait) for the bus but then it was too late.  
 4 A: Where ..... (you/go) when I ..... (see) you yesterday  
 afternoon? You ..... (seem) to be in a hurry.  
 B: I was. I ..... (go) to Sue's wedding. That's why I .....  
 (wear) that funny hat.  
 5 A: The tour guide ..... (give) us an interesting leaflet about the church this morning.  
 B: Did she? I missed that because I ..... (go) to the bank. When I  
 ..... (come) back, she ..... (talk) about the castle.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Quando o professor entrou na sala de aula, as crianças estavam brincando com uma bola.  
 2 Eu liguei para você às 11. Onde você estava? – Eu estava sentada no jardim e não ouvi o telefone.  
 3 Você viu a Jill ontem? – Sim, ela estava (to look) terrível. Ela estava usando um vestido verde horrível.  
 4 Quando chegamos a Londres, estava chovendo e nós quisemos voltar para casa.  
 5 Nesta hora, na semana passada, eu estava deitado na praia.



## 7 Present perfect

- A: Have you seen that new film at the Odeon yet?  
 B: Yes, it's good. I ~~was in~~ <sup>have been to</sup> the cinema a lot ~~in the last time~~ <sup>recently</sup>.  
 A: Really? I thought you were a sports person, a tennis fan.  
 B: Yes, but I ~~had~~ <sup>have had</sup> only one or two games lately.  
 A: Well, how about a game this weekend?  
 B: OK. ~~Were you ever in~~ <sup>Have you ever been to</sup> the new sports centre? I hear it's very good.

### Forma

- have ou has + participio  
 Sally **has moved**. They've **bought** a flat in town.  
 Sally *mudou-se*. Eles *compraram* um apartamento na cidade.
- Forma do participio:  
 Verbos regulares\*: I've **booked** a table.  
 igual à forma do passado *Eu reservei uma mesa.*  
 Verbos irregulares: Tom **has sent** a card. The Wilsons **have written** too.  
 formas especiais (veja abaixo) *O Tom mandou um cartão. Os Wilson também escreveram.*
- Negação: have/has + not I **haven't slept**. Tony **hasn't come** home. *Eu não dormi. O Tony não chegou em casa.*
- Perguntas e respostas curtas: have/has  
 Have you **phoned**? – Yes, I **have**. / No, I **haven't**. *Você ligou? – Sim. / Não.*  
 Has Ed **come**? – Yes, he **has**. / No, he **hasn't**. *Ed veio? – Sim. / Não.*

\* Peculiaridades ortográficas: veja página 111

### Verbos irregulares (veja a lista completa na orelha do livro/marcador de páginas)

be	was/were	been	go	went	gone	run	ran	run
buy	bought	bought	have	had	had	say	said	said
come	came	come	know	knew	known	see	saw	seen
do	did	done	make	made	made	tell	told	told
get	got	got	meet	met	met	take	took	taken
give	gave	given	read	read	read	write	wrote	written

### Uso e palavras sinalizadoras

O present perfect indica que algo aconteceu em algum momento do passado. O exato momento não tem importância ou é desconhecido; essencial é o fato de que **algo** aconteceu. Quando se menciona o momento exato, **não** se pode usar o present perfect!

- Palavras sinalizadoras típicas são expressões que designam todo o tempo passado até agora ou apenas o passado recente.

Todo o tempo passado até agora    already (*já*), yet? (*já? – em perguntas*), before (*uma vez já*), so far (*até agora*),  
 always (*desde sempre*), ever? (*já alguma vez?*), never (*nunca*), not yet (*ainda não*)

O passado recente    just (*há pouco tempo*), recently (*recentemente*), lately (*ultimamente*)

- Posição: so far, before, yet, recently, lately ficam no fim da frase; outras expressões ficam antes do participio.  
 I've met Ann before, but I haven't met Tom yet.    I've never been to Rome. Have you ever been there?

### Resumo

- Verbos regulares: have/has + -ed; verbos irregulares: formas especiais
- O present perfect **não** pode ser usado quando se menciona um momento determinado.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I never have read this book.  
b I have never read this book. ✓

- 1 a Have you ever been to Italy?  
b Were you ever in Italy?

- 2 a He has done already his homework.  
b He has already done his homework.

- 3 a Have you written to Sue in the last time?  
b Have you written to Sue lately?

- 4 a Joy have not phoned yet.  
b Joy has not phoned yet.

- 5 a Pete isn't here. He is gone to the bank.  
b Pete isn't here. He has gone to the bank.

- 6 a I've been to Finland before.  
b I've been in Finland before.

**B Make complete sentences.**

(never) I / be / Canada I've never been to Canada.

- 1 (before) Paul / be / the USA

- 2 (ever) your son / run away from home?

- 3 (just) I / finish my homework

- 4 (yet) you / do your homework?

- 5 (always) we / want to go to Israel

- 6 (recently) I / have a lot of work

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the correct form.**

A: Let's go to the opera tomorrow.

B: That's a good idea. I ~~haven't been~~ (not be) to the opera lately.

- 1 A: What's the matter with Tom?

B: He ..... (just hear) some bad news.

- 2 A: What's the new Chinese restaurant like?

B: I don't know. I ..... (not be) there yet.

- 3 A: Are the children at home or ..... (they/go out)?

B: I'm afraid you ..... (just miss) them. They ..... (go) to the cinema.

- 4 A: ..... (your husband/give up) smoking yet?

B: No, he ..... (have) a lot of problems.

**D Give short answers.**

Have you booked a table? – Yes, I **have**.

- 1 Has Craig invited you to his party? –  
No, .....

- 2 Have you heard from Ann? –

Yes, .....

- 3 Have the children done their homework yet? –  
No, .....

- 4 Has Sue phoned recently? –

Yes, .....

**E Write questions for these answers.**

A: ~~Have you ever been~~ to Wales?

B: Wales? No, I haven't but I'd love to go.

- 1 A: How many people ..... ?  
B: I've invited twenty.

- 2 A: How many books ..... ?  
B: John Grisham? He's written several.

- 3 A: ..... where to go on holiday?  
B: No, we haven't decided yet.

- 4 A: ..... to the cinema recently?  
B: No, I've been far too busy.

- 5 A: ..... to Berlin?  
B: Yes, we have – it's a great city.



- A: Ann and I ~~have seen~~ <sup>saw</sup> the new Spielberg film yesterday.  
 B: Was it good?  
 A: Yes, but the book is better. I ~~have read~~ <sup>read</sup> it on holiday.  
 B: You've been to the cinema a lot recently.  
 A: Yes, I ~~was~~ <sup>have been</sup> there three times so far this month.  
 B: I know! You went with me last week.

### Present perfect

- O present perfect indica que algo aconteceu em algum momento do passado.

I **have been** to the USA. →  
 Tom says he **has seen** this film before. →

- Em perguntas, frequentemente alguém quer saber se algo aconteceu no passado (em todo o passado até agora).

Have you ever **been** to Australia? – Yes, I have. →  
 Has Tom **phoned**? – Yes, he has. →

- Em textos coerentes, relata-se frequentemente no present perfect um fato sem a indicação de circunstâncias concretas (sobretudo sem indicar o momento exato). Detalhes adicionais sobre as razões e o desenrolar dos acontecimentos são depois apresentados no simple past.

I've **been** to Chile. → Really? Where **did** you go? What **did** you see?  
 John **has broken** his arm. → He **fell** off his bike yesterday.  
 I've **lost** my watch. → It **happened** yesterday evening somewhere in town.

### Present perfect e simple past com ou sem indicações de tempo

- Ambas as formas são usadas com palavras sinalizadoras típicas (veja units 5 e 7).  
 Em frases com o simple past, indica-se determinado momento.

I **have visited** Italy before. → We **spent** our holidays there again last year.  
 I **have seen** the film *Casablanca* 15 times so far. → I **first saw** it when I **was** a teenager 20 years ago.

- Mesmo quando não se dá indicação temporal exata, o uso do simple past é obrigatório se o acontecimento só pode ter ocorrido em determinado momento do passado.

Workers **have found** a 2000-year-old building. → The Romans **built** it. This place **was** a Roman town.  
 Sheila **has lived** in lots of different countries. → She **was born** in New Zealand.  
 I **have read** *Hamlet*. → It's one of the most famous plays Shakespeare **wrote**.

### O present perfect e sua referência ao presente

- O present perfect muitas vezes indica um acontecimento que, de alguma forma, tem efeito sobre o presente (por isso o nome *present perfect*).

I've **been** to Scotland. [= Eu conheço a Escócia.]  
 They've **closed** the road! [= Agora precisamos pegar um desvio.]

### Resumo

- O present perfect **não** pode ser usado quando se menciona ou se pressupõe determinado momento no passado.
- Present perfect: algo aconteceu em algum momento e tem efeitos que são importantes/relevantes agora.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a Ben broke his leg last week. ✓  
b Ben has broken his leg last week.
- 1 a The Berlin Wall fell in 1989.  
b The Berlin Wall has fallen in 1989.
- 2 a Jackie had an accident two weeks ago.  
b Jackie has had an accident two weeks ago.
- 3 a I didn't have time to go to the bank yesterday.  
b I haven't had time to go to the bank yesterday.
- 4 a Sorry, I've forgotten to phone you last night.  
b Sorry, I forgot to phone you last night.
- 5 a When have you bought your new coat?  
b When did you buy your new coat?
- 6 a I was in LA several times – it's a great city.  
b I've been to LA several times – it's a great city.

**B Make dialogues as in the example.**

A: you / ever / work in the USA? *Have you ever worked in the USA?*

B: Yes, I / work in New York in 1998. *Yes, I worked in New York in 1998.*

- 1 A: you / ever / break your arm or your leg?  
B: Yes, I / break my leg three years ago.
- 2 A: you / read Robert Goddard's latest book?  
B: Yes, I / read it while I was on holiday.
- 3 A: you / find your keys yet?  
B: Yes, I / find them a few minutes ago.
- 4 A: you / do your homework yet?  
B: Yes, I / do it yesterday.

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the present perfect or simple past.**

A: I **went** (go) to the Monet exhibition yesterday. *Have you seen (you/see) it yet?*

B: No, I **wanted** (want) to go last week but there **were** (be) so many people.

- 1 A: ..... (you/speak) to Dave yet?  
B: No. I ..... (phone) him at 2 o'clock and I ..... (ring) again at three o'clock but he ..... (not be) at home.
- 2 A: ..... (you/learn) French when you were at school?  
B: Yes, but that ..... (be) 20 years ago and now I ..... (forget) most of it. I ..... (not like) the French teacher and so I ..... (not do) my homework.
- 3 A: We ..... (just book) our summer holidays. What about you?  
B: Well, we ..... (get) some brochures from the travel agency last week, but we still ..... (not decide) where to go.
- 4 A: Last week I ..... (decide) to go on a diet. I ..... (buy) a new suit a couple of months ago and now it doesn't fit. I ..... (never wear) it!  
B: I ..... (try) to lose weight last year but I ..... (not be) very successful – I ..... (give up) after a month.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 John comprou um carro novo. Ele o comprou na semana passada. Não foi caro.  
2 Você pode ficar com (to have) o livro. Eu já o li. Eu o li nas férias; foi muito bom.  
3 Você escreveu todos os convites? – Não, eu só escrevi dez ontem.  
4 A Sandra nos deu o novo número de telefone dela? – Não. Ela nos mandou um cartão-postal na semana passada, mas esqueceu-se do número novo.  
5 Vocês ouviram (falar) da Hilary e do George? Eles se mudaram! – Verdade? Quando eles se mudaram?



## 9 Present perfect com *since* e *for*

- have you known*  
A: How long ~~do you know~~ Claire?  
B: Oh, a long time. She's nice, isn't she?  
*have known him for*  
A: Yes, her brother's nice too. I ~~know him since~~ three years.  
B: Oh really? He's still on holiday in the USA at the moment, isn't he?  
*he has been*  
A: Well, ~~he's~~ there all summer, but he's coming back next week.  
B: I see.

### A diferença de significado entre *since* e *for* ("desde" e "há")

- *Since* designa o momento em que algo se iniciou.  
*since* = "desde" + momento exato  
*since 1999, since 4 o'clock, since yesterday morning, since Tuesday, since last year*
- *For* + indicação de tempo designam um período, indicando a duração.  
*for* = "há" + período  
*for five minutes, for two hours, for six weeks, for a month, for years, for ages (há uma eternidade)*

### Uso

**!** *Since* e *for* + present perfect expressam que algo começou no passado e continua até o presente momento. Ao contrário do que acontece em português, o verbo **não** é usado no presente!

They've had (~~They have~~) snow *since* last Monday.

*Lá tem neve desde a última segunda-feira.*

We've known (~~We know~~) Sam *since* 1990.

*Nós conhecemos o Sam desde 1990.*

I've been (~~I am~~) here *since* 9 o'clock.

*Eu estou aqui desde as nove horas.*

They've had (~~They have~~) snow *for* ten days now.

*Lá tem neve há dez dias agora.*

We've known (~~We know~~) Sam *for* over ten years.

*Nós conhecemos o Sam há mais de dez anos.*

It's 11 now, so I've been (~~I am~~) here *for* two hours.

*São 11 agora, portanto estou aqui há duas horas.*

- Usa-se o present perfect em perguntas com *how long?* e em indicações temporais com *all* quando se designa um período que chega até o presente.

How long have you *been* a professional? *Desde quando / Há quanto tempo você é profissional?*

How long have you *known* each other? *Há quanto tempo vocês se conhecem?*

We've had no electricity *all* day. *Já estamos sem eletricidade o dia inteiro.*

Tom *has been* ill *all* week. *Tom está doente a semana toda.*

- O present perfect precisa ser usado quando um estado iniciado no passado está durando até o presente.

They *have* always *wanted* to buy a house. *Eles sempre quiseram comprar uma casa.*

We *haven't had* time to discuss this. *Não tivemos tempo para discutir isso.*

### Resumo

- "desde" = *since* + momento; *for* + período
- *since/for* são usados com o present perfect, **não** com o simple present nem com o present continuous.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a We've been married since June. ✓  
b We are married since June.
- 1 a How long do you know Ken?  
b How long have you known Ken?
- 2 a Jane has been here since two weeks.  
b Jane has been here for two weeks.
- 3 a I have a headache all morning.  
b I've had a headache all morning.
- 4 a How long have you this car?  
b How long have you had this car?
- 5 a We know each other since our school days.  
b We've known each other since our school days.
- 6 a I've always wanted to go to LA – next year maybe.  
b I always wanted to go to LA – next year maybe.

**B Since or for?**

I've lived here ~~since~~ I was born.

- 1 They've been married ..... 1992.  
2 We've known each other ..... ages.  
3 Alan has had visitors ..... last week.
- 4 Angela has been in Wales ..... the end of June.  
5 I haven't felt well ..... I got up.  
6 We haven't had a holiday ..... two years.

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the correct form and choose *since* or *for*.**

A: How long have you been married (you/be married)?

B: ~~Since~~/For two years, but we've ~~known~~ (know) each other ~~for~~ since 1996.

- 1 A: ..... (you/meet) Carol before?  
B: Yes, we ..... (know) each other *since/for* we were students, but we  
..... (not see) each other *since/for* years.
- 2 A: How long ..... (your son/be) in France?  
B: *Since/For* the beginning of the month. He ..... (only write) once so far.
- 3 A: I ..... (not hear) from Barry and Julie *since/for* their party.  
..... (you/see) them recently?  
B: Julie ..... (be) away twice this month. I ..... (not  
speak) to her *since/for* several days now.
- 4 A: I ..... (always want) to go to New Zealand. ....  
(you/ever be) there?  
B: No, I haven't. Actually, I ..... (not have) a real holiday *since/for* a long time.
- 5 A: How long ..... (you/be) with this company?  
B: Too long! I ..... (be) here *since/for* I left school. I .....  
(never have) another job.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Estamos na Espanha agora. Estamos aqui há uma semana.  
2 Eu tenho tido problemas com o computador o dia inteiro. Tenho um computador muito velho.  
3 Há quanto tempo seu filho já está na Áustria? Ele está em Salzburgo ou em Viena?  
4 Eu já conheço a Mary a minha vida toda. Nós nos vemos todo mês.  
5 Há quanto tempo você conhece seu marido? – Nós nos conhecemos há muito tempo, mas estamos casados há apenas dois meses. Estamos muito felizes.



## 10 Present perfect versus simple past (2)

- A: Four o'clock at last. What a day!  
~~I had~~ <sup>have had</sup>  
 B: ~~I've had~~ a terrible morning and I ~~have~~ a headache all afternoon.  
 A: I've had an awful day too.  
 B: This morning I ~~have missed~~ <sup>missed</sup> the bus.  
 A: I've been so busy. No time for coffee, lunch – nothing.  
 B: ~~I've had~~ <sup>I had</sup> a sandwich at lunchtime, but that's all.

### Present perfect e simple past com as mesmas indicações temporais

- Indicações de tempo com **for** podem ter diferentes significados. Quando a preposição **for** é utilizada para designar um período que dura até o presente, usa-se o **present perfect**.

Quando se designa um período acabado, usa-se o **simple past**.

- Andy is ill. He **has had** the flu **for** 2 weeks. → Tim is fit again. He **was ill** **for** 2 weeks.  
 Andy ainda está doente. Ele está com gripe há duas semanas. Tim está bem de novo. Ele esteve doente durante duas semanas.
- I've **been** a member of the tennis club **for** 3 years. → Before that I **was** in a football club **for** 3 years.  
 Eu sou membro do clube de tênis há três anos. Antes disso, estive durante três anos num clube de futebol.

- Always, never** e **all** podem se referir também ao tempo todo, até o presente (**present perfect**), ou apenas a um tempo encerrado no passado (**simple past**).

- I **have always** loved the cinema. → As a child I **always** went to the cinema on Sunday.  
 Sempre gostei do cinema. Quando era criança, sempre ia ao cinema aos domingos.
- I've **never been** to Canada. → When I lived in the USA I **never** had time.  
 Nunca estive no Canadá. Quando morei nos EUA, nunca tive tempo.
- I've **had** earache all day. → I **had** it all day yesterday too.  
 Estou com dor de ouvido o dia inteiro. Ontem tive dor o dia inteiro também.

- Indicações temporais com **this...** e **today** podem ser usadas com **present perfect** ou com o **simple past**. Quando se indica um tempo já encerrado, pode-se usar apenas o **simple past**.

- (de manhã, às 11h) I've **spoken** to Bill **this morning**. (depois do meio-dia) I **spoke** to Bill **this morning**.  
 (16h) We've **been** swimming **this afternoon**. (20h) We **went** swimming **this afternoon**.

### Síntese (units 8-10)

#### Present perfect

- A ação/situação está inacabada.  
We've **been** here for 15 years.
- Uma sequência de ações repetidas ainda não acabou.  
Watson **has** played for England 54 times so far.
- A ação aconteceu em algum momento até o presente.  
I've **been** to Norway.
- A ação ainda é relevante/atual, tem efeito sobre o presente.  
I've **lost** my wallet. What can I do?

#### Simple past

- A ação/situação está concluída.  
We **moved** here from Oxford.
- Uma sequência de ações repetidas foi concluída no passado.  
Bond **played** for Wales 77 times. He **died** last week.
- A ação aconteceu em determinado momento do passado.  
I **went** in 1997. It was in the summer.
- A ação aconteceu no passado e não tem vínculo com o presente.  
I **lost** my passport once, but I got it back again.

### Resumo

- Simple past**: está concluído.
- Present perfect**: está inacabado ou, tendo ocorrido em algum momento, continua sendo relevante e atual.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a We lived in Boston for two years – from 1982–1984. ✓  
 b We've lived in Boston for two years – from 1982–1984.
- 1 a How many plays has Shakespeare written?  
 b How many plays did Shakespeare write?
- 2 a When I was a student, I worked on a farm.  
 b When I was a student, I have worked on a farm.
- 3 a My uncle died when I was ten, I never met him.  
 b My uncle died when I was ten, I've never met him.
- 4 a As children, we have always had a dog.  
 b As children, we always had a dog.
- 5 a I've lost my car keys yesterday.  
 b I lost my car keys yesterday.
- 6 a I've been here for two weeks – I leave next week.  
 b I was here for two weeks – I leave next week.

**B Present perfect or simple past?**

(It's 6 pm.) I ~~didn't have~~ (not have) breakfast today.

- 1 (It's June.) We ..... (not have) a holiday this year.  
 2 (It's 11 am.) My alarm clock ..... (not ring) this morning and I was late.  
 3 (It's December.) We ..... (not have) much snow so far this winter.  
 4 (It's Thursday.) Harry ..... (be) late for work every morning this week.  
 5 (It's Saturday evening.) I ..... (not see) the neighbours this weekend. Are they away?

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the present perfect or simple past.**

- 1 A: My goodness! It's 11 o'clock and I still ..... (not have) breakfast.  
 I ..... (have) a coffee when I ..... (get up) – that's all.  
 B: Let's go for lunch soon. A new bistro ..... (open) last month – it's great.
- 2 A: What a week! I ..... (work) all day yesterday without a break and I  
 ..... (not have) a break today either. Still, only one more hour!  
 B: I ..... (make) some sandwiches this morning – would you like one?
- 3 A: I'm sorry to hear about your grandfather. When ..... (he/die)?  
 B: Well, he ..... (be) ill for a long time and then three weeks ago he  
 ..... (go) into hospital and ..... (die) two days later.  
 Since then my grandmother ..... (be) with my parents.
- 4 A: I ..... (decide) to go to Scotland this year – next month probably.  
 ..... (you/ever be) there?  
 B: Yes, once as a child. My grandparents ..... (take) me there.  
 It really ..... (be) a wonderful holiday.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 São 15h e eu não fiz nada o dia inteiro. Ontem só fiquei sentado no jardim o dia inteiro.  
 2 Vinte anos atrás, lemos *Hamlet* na escola, e ontem assisti à peça no teatro.  
 3 Meu marido está no hospital há uma semana. Ano passado ele também esteve no hospital.  
 4 Já é terça-feira e minha filha ainda não ligou. Ela voou para Roma no sábado e prometeu ligar.



# 11 Present perfect continuous (1)



*have you been living*

A: How long ~~are you living~~ here now, Andrew?

B: Over ten years. We came when Sally got a job at the new hospital.

*I've known*

A: ~~I've been knowing~~ her for a long time, but I never realized that she once worked at the hospital.

B: Well, she didn't like it much. That's why she changed to the university.

*has been working*

A: She ~~works~~ there since Jack and I came here.

## Forma

■ have/has been ...ing

I've been reading. Sue has been working.

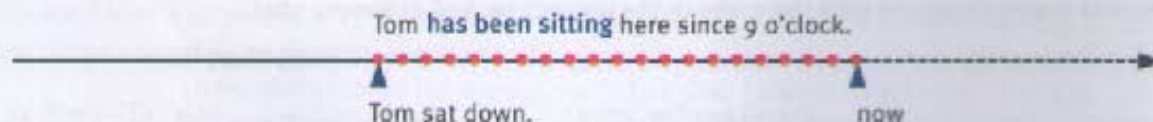
■ Negação e perguntas como  
no present perfect (unit 7)

We haven't been watching TV.

Have you been looking for us? – Yes, I have.

## Uso

■ A forma contínua do present perfect expressa que algo começou no passado e dura até o presente.  
Since indica o momento inicial; for, a duração de uma ação.



Tom has been sitting (~~Tom is sitting~~) here since 9 o'clock. O Tom está sentado aqui desde as nove horas.

We've been waiting (~~We are waiting~~) for an hour. Estamos esperando há uma hora.

I've been living and working (~~I live and work~~) here since 1995. Estou morando e trabalhando aqui desde 1995.

Is she ill? She has been eating (~~She is eating~~) so little recently. ...Ela está doente? Ela tem comido tão pouco ultimamente.

Ao contrário do uso em português, o verbo **não** pode ficar no simple present (veja também unit 9).



## Diferenças de uso entre a forma contínua e a forma simples do present perfect

■ Com determinados verbos (p.ex., live, work), ambas as formas podem ser usadas sem distinção.

I have been living here for a long time. / I have lived here for a long time. Estou morando aqui há muito tempo.

Ed has been working for IBM since 1999. / Ed has worked for IBM since 1999. O Ed trabalha desde 1999 na IBM.



A forma contínua **não é** possível com verbos como know, have etc. (veja units 4 e 9).

~~I have been knowing Janet for 10 years.~~ I have known Janet for 10 years. Conheço a Janet há dez anos.

~~I have been having this cold for a week.~~ I have had this cold for a week. Estou resfriado há uma semana.

■ A forma contínua **não é** possível quando always indica todo o tempo transcorrido até agora.

~~I've always been driving a Ford.~~ I've always driven a Ford. Até hoje, só tive carros da Ford.

## Resumo

■ Use a forma contínua do present perfect, e **não** o presente, quando algo está perdurando.

■ "desde": since (+ momento inicial); for (+ período)

■ Verbos como know, have etc. e always (= o tempo todo até agora): forma simples (e **não** a forma contínua) do present perfect.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a John is living here since 1998.  
b John has been living here since 1998. ✓
- 1 a I have been working at this bank since 14 years.    4 a Have your parents always been living in Bristol?  
b I have been working at this bank for 14 years.    b Have your parents always lived in Bristol?
- 2 a Sorry, I'm late. Are you waiting long?  
b Sorry, I'm late. Have you been waiting long?
- 3 a How long has Jane been living in the USA?  
b How long does Jane live in the USA?
- 5 a We've known each other for years.  
b We've been knowing each other for years.
- 6 a I'm so tired! I do a lot of overtime recently.  
b I'm so tired! I've been doing a lot of overtime recently.

**B Ask questions with *How long ... ?* and the present perfect continuous. Give answers with *for* or *since*.**

A: you / live in Berlin? *How long have you been living in Berlin?*

B: five years *For five years.*

- 1 A: you / wait?    4 A: you / look for a new flat?  
B: 20 minutes    B: ages
- 2 A: your wife / learn French?    5 A: it / snow?  
B: last October    B: I got up
- 3 A: your children / travel round Europe?  
B: the beginning of the summer holidays

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the correct form. Use the present perfect continuous where possible.**

A: How's the weather in Spain?

B: Terrible! It's ~~raining~~ **been raining (rain)** since we arrived.

- 1 A: Is your son still in Australia?  
B: Yes, he ..... **(work)** there since he left university.
- 2 A: Time goes so quickly! Do you realize Sam and I ..... **(live)** here for over ten years now?  
B: I know. We ..... **(be)** here since we got married.
- 3 A: How long ..... **(you/look for)** a new job?  
B: Since May. I ..... **(know)** since then that the firm will probably close down.
- 4 A: What's the matter? You ..... **(stare)** out of the window for ages.  
B: I ..... **(think about)** my mother. She ..... **(be)** in hospital since last Wednesday.  
A: I didn't realize she wasn't well. How long ..... **(she/be)** ill?
- 5 A: Where have you been? I ..... **(wait)** for over 30 minutes!  
B: I'm sorry. I ..... **(try)** to reach you on your mobile phone since I left work.  
A: Typical! I ..... **(have)** the phone for two months now and nobody ever phones me so I left it at home.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Nós moramos em São Paulo. Nós moramos/estamos morando lá há sete anos.  
2 Você conhece o Harry? – Sim, nós nos conhecemos há anos.  
3 Estou com dor de cabeça. Estou com dor de cabeça há três dias.  
4 Trabalho no departamento de exportação. Há quanto tempo você já está trabalhando aqui?  
5 Meu marido sempre trabalha duro, mas ultimamente está trabalhando demais.



## 12 Present perfect continuous (2)

A: Why are you so dirty? Just look at your face and clothes!

*I've been painting.*

B: I've painted.

A: I can see that, but what? You've got paint everywhere!

*We've been painting*

B: Jane's flat. ~~We've painted~~ her flat all afternoon.

A: All of it, in one afternoon?

*We've managed*

B: No, no. ~~We've been managing~~ one room. We're going to do the other two tomorrow.

### Uso no caso de ações concluídas

- Na unit 11, vimos que a forma contínua do present perfect expressa algo que se iniciou no passado e dura até o presente.

A ação/o processo pode ter sido terminado pouco antes.

Where have you been? – I've been helping Jane. *Onde você esteve? – Estava ajudando a Jane.*

What a day! I've been painting the kitchen. *Que dia! Eu pinte a cozinha.*

- Frequentemente, a ação concluída tem consequências imediatas – talvez visíveis. O falante explica as razões da situação presente.

You're out of breath. – Yes, I've been running. *Você está sem fôlego. – Sim, eu estava correndo.*

Why is your hair wet? – I've been swimming. *Por que seus cabelos estão molhados? – Estava nadando.*

### Diferenças de uso entre a forma contínua e a forma simples no caso de ações concluídas.

- A forma contínua enfatiza a ação e sua duração; a forma simples expressa o resultado da ação.

I need to wash. I've been painting my bedroom. → I've painted my bedroom. I'll paint the kitchen now.

You look tired. – I've been reading reports. → I've read six long reports.

We've been writing Christmas cards. → We've written to our relatives, but not to our friends.

- A forma contínua não é possível quando se indica um resultado (pergunta "quanto/s?").

~~We've been taking over 100 photos.~~

We've taken over 100 photos.

~~Ann has been reading 300 pages.~~

Ann has read 300 pages.

~~How many potatoes has he been eating?~~

How many potatoes has he eaten?

- A forma simples geralmente não é possível quando se indica apenas o tipo de atividade de alguém. Isso acontece frequentemente em orações sem objeto.

Where have you been? – I've been working outside. ~~I've worked outside.~~

Have you been busy? – Yes, I've been cooking. ~~Yes, I've cooked.~~

### Resumo

- Use a forma contínua do present perfect quando algo foi concluído recentemente ou ainda tem consequências.
- A forma contínua enfatiza a ação e a duração; a forma simples enfatiza o resultado final.
- Resposta à pergunta "quanto/s?": com a forma simples.
- Pura indicação da atividade: forma contínua.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I've called Sue six times today – she's never at home. ✓  
 b I've been calling Sue six times today – she's never at home.
- 1 a I've been reading a great book. I'll soon finish it.      4 a Gary's exhausted. He's jogged.  
 b I've read a great book. I'll soon finish it.                      b Gary's exhausted. He's been jogging.
- 2 a How much has Jo been saving for her holiday?      5 a We've been trying to call all day. Where can he be?  
 b How much has Jo saved for her holiday?                      b We try to call all day. Where can he be?
- 3 a I've done 40 hours overtime this month.      6 a I've written ten cards since breakfast.  
 b I've been doing 40 hours overtime this month.                      b I've been writing ten cards since breakfast.

**B Present perfect or present perfect continuous?**

I've ~~been reading~~ (read) this book for two hours. I've ~~read~~ (read) four chapters so far.

- 1 So far I ..... (teach) at four schools in Porto Alegre.  
 I ..... (be) at this school since 1999.
- 2 How long ..... (Jenny/learn) to drive?  
 How many driving lessons ..... (she/have) so far?
- 3 Janet ..... (talk) to her friend on the phone for 45 minutes now.  
 She ..... (make) six calls since she got home from school.
- 4 Jack's wet and dirty because he ..... (wash) the car.  
 He ..... (wash) it twice this month.

**C Complete these sentences with the verbs in the correct form: present continuous, present perfect or present perfect continuous.**

- 1 build They ..... a new shopping complex at the moment.  
 They ..... it ever since we moved here.  
 They ..... about half of it so far.
- 2 write I've got a new hobby – I ..... a cookery book.  
 I ..... the main part of the book. I finished it last week.  
 I ..... the introduction since then.
- 3 cut We ..... all the hedges in the garden – they look much better.  
 At the moment my wife ..... the lawn.  
 I ..... the rose bushes all morning and still haven't finished.
- 4 read I ..... ever since I got up.  
 I ..... a great book at the moment – it was a birthday present.  
 It's so good – I ..... three quarters of it already.
- 5 play My daughter ..... at several important concerts.  
 Listen! She ..... a piece by Chopin.  
 She ..... the piano since she was a child.

**D Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the correct form: simple present, present perfect or present perfect continuous.**

- 1 A: Don't come in the house – you're really dirty! What ..... (you/do)?  
 B: I ..... (help) dad clean the garage.
- 2 A: Where ..... (you/be)? I ..... (not see) you all afternoon.  
 B: I ..... (watch) television.
- 3 A: Congratulations on your new job! ..... (you/like) it?  
 B: I ..... (only be) there for a few days but it ..... (seem) fine.
- 4 A: The phone ..... (be) engaged for hours! Who .....  
 (you/speak) to?  
 B: Margaret. She ..... (want) us to go for dinner on Saturday.



# 13 Past perfect

A: Sorry I'm late. My train was late because of the snow.

B: I was lucky. When I left home, they <sup>had already cleared</sup> ~~already cleared~~ the roads.

A: Is there any coffee?

B: There should be. When I looked in the kitchen a few minutes ago, someone <sup>had just put</sup> ~~has just put~~ the machine on.

A: Good. My feet are like ice. I need something hot to warm me up.

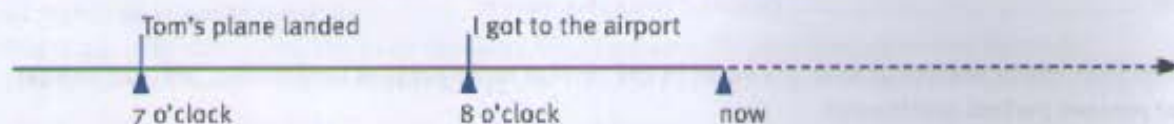
B: Like Jane. Her bus was very late. When it finally arrived, she <sup>had been waiting</sup> ~~was waiting~~ in the cold for over 40 minutes.

## Forma

- Forma simples: had(n't) + particípio  
I arrived at 5.00. By 6.30 I **had unpacked**. I **had had** a shower. I **hadn't eaten**.  
Had you **phoned** home? – Yes, I **had**. / No, I **hadn't**.
- Forma contínua: had(n't) been ...ing  
When the bus came, I **had been waiting** for 3 minutes. I **hadn't been waiting** long.  
Had you **been hurrying**? – Yes, I **had**. / No, I **hadn't**.

## Uso

- O past perfect (pretérito mais-que-perfeito) indica algo que se encerrou.



When I got to the airport, Tom's plane **had** already landed.

- A forma contínua do past perfect indica que algo tinha começado antes de determinado momento no passado e estava durando até aquele momento. A duração frequentemente é indicada com **for** ou **since**.  
He **had been waiting** for a whole hour / **since** 8 o'clock. *Ele já estava esperando havia uma hora / desde as oito horas.*

Verbos como know, have etc. **não** podem ser usados na forma contínua (veja lista na unit 4).  
I **hadn't known** (~~hadn't been knowing~~) that he would take an earlier flight.

## Diferenças de uso: past perfect continuous/forma simples – simple past

- A forma contínua enfatiza a ação e sua duração; a forma simples expressa o resultado final. A forma contínua não pode ser usada quando se indica um resultado (pergunta "quanto/s?") (veja unit 12).  
He **had been looking** round the airport shops. He **had bought** a book and two magazines.
- Quando ocorrem duas ações consecutivas e a segunda expressa uma consequência lógica da primeira ou uma reação a ela, ambas são expressas pelo simple past.  
We **left** the terminal building and **went** to the car park.
- Caso se queira expressar que a primeira ação foi concluída antes, ela fica no past perfect.  
I **had started** the engine when Tom **asked** if he could drive.
- Em orações subordinadas com **as soon as**, **after**, **before** e **until**, pode-se usar o past perfect ou o simple past.  
**As soon as** / **After** we (had) **left** the airport, it started raining. It didn't stop **before/until** we (had) **got** home.

## Resumo

- Use o past perfect quando algo foi concluído antes de determinado momento no passado.
- A forma contínua do past perfect enfatiza a duração de algo até determinado momento no passado.
- Não** use a forma contínua do past perfect com verbos como know, have etc. e em respostas à pergunta "quanto/s?".



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a It had been stopping raining by the evening.  
 b It had stopped raining by the evening. ✓
- 1 a We got to the cinema late and the film already started.  
 b We got to the cinema late and the film had already started.
- 2 a When we finally got home, we had been travelling for over 20 hours.  
 b When we finally got home, we travelled for over 20 hours.
- 3 a Did you go to Australia before your trip last May?  
 b Had you been to Australia before your trip last May?
- 4 a It was lovely to see Linda last week. I hadn't seen her since we left university.  
 b It was lovely to see Linda last week. I didn't see her since we left university.

**B Make complete sentences using the simple past and the past perfect.**

When / we / get to the party / the other guests / already / arrive.

When we got to the party, the other guests had already arrived.

- 1 I / already / do all the housework / when I / leave home yesterday morning.  
 2 We / only be abroad once before we / fly to China last year.  
 3 The little girl / be upset because she / lose her mother in the supermarket.  
 4 Joe / almost give up / when he finally / find a new job.  
 5 Our visitors / not arrive on time because their car / break down on the motorway.  
 6 They / not be married very long when they / decide to get divorced.

**C Complete this story using the simple past, the past continuous, the past perfect or the past perfect continuous.**

Two years ago Laura ..... 1 (have) a very strange Christmas. As usual, she flew home from Brazil to spend Christmas with her parents in England. The evening before her flight, she ..... 2 (wrap up) all the presents she ..... 3 (buy) in the weeks before Christmas. While Laura ..... 4 (pack) her suitcase, a friend from England ..... 5 (call) and they ..... 6 (decide) to meet for coffee at Heathrow Airport as they ..... 7 (not see) each other for months.

The next day, Laura ..... 8 (wake up) really early feeling very excited. She ..... 9 (not be) home since May and ..... 10 (look forward to) her holiday with her parents for weeks. The flight ..... 11 (land) on time and Laura ..... 12 (go) to the baggage reclaim to collect her suitcase. After she ..... 13 (wait) for over 20 minutes, she ..... 14 (realize) that she was the only person without her luggage. She ..... 15 (go) to the airline information desk and ..... 16 (fill in) a form with details about her missing suitcase. They ..... 17 (tell) her that her suitcase would be delivered the next morning – 24 December.

After Laura ..... 18 (meet) her friend for coffee, she ..... 19 (take) the bus and train to her parents'. They ..... 20 (stand) on the platform when her train ..... 21 (arrive) and they ..... 22 (be) very surprised when Laura ..... 23 (get off) with only her handbag. Laura ..... 24 (explain) what ..... 25 (happen) while they ..... 26 (walk) to the car. The suitcase finally ..... 27 (come) on 26 December. The airline ..... 28 (send) it to Casablanca by mistake!



A: What happened exactly?

B: The other driver just came straight out of a side road, without stopping. I am sure he ~~had drunk~~ <sup>had been drinking</sup>.

A: Are you OK?

B: Yes, but Tom is suffering from shock. He ~~drove~~ <sup>was driving</sup>.

A: Can I go in to him?

B: The doctor ~~examines~~ <sup>is examining</sup> him at the moment.

### Forma contínua versus forma simples

■ A forma contínua indica algo que está acontecendo, que ainda não está concluído.

A forma simples indica um estado permanente preexistente ou uma ação/situação concluída.

What are you doing here? – I'm waiting for my son. → I usually wait outside. But it's too cold today.

At the time we were staying at a hotel in Nice. → We stayed there six days, then went to Paris.

I've been answering e-mails all morning. → I've answered more than 20 so far.

He took a taxi because he had been drinking. → He had drunk at least half a bottle of wine.

■ Várias ações repetidas também podem ser expressas pela forma contínua quando representam uma situação coerente.

Tom is cycling to work at the moment. I've been walking to work recently. We both want to get fit again.

■ A forma contínua refere-se a determinado momento ou período.

I am waiting  
now  
What are you doing here? – I'm waiting for Jim.  
Present: momento presente.  
No momento presente, algo está acontecendo/ocorrendo.

I was waiting  
Ann came along  
now  
I was waiting for Jim when Ann came along.  
Past: momento no passado.  
Naquele momento, algo estava acontecendo/ocorrendo.

I have been waiting  
30 minutes ago  
now  
Why are you late? I have been waiting for 30 minutes.  
Present perfect: período até (ou quase até) o momento presente. Algo está/estava perdurando até agora (ou quase até agora).

I had been waiting  
7.30  
8.00 Jim arrived  
now  
I had been waiting for 30 minutes when Jim arrived.  
Past perfect: período até (ou quase até) determinado momento no passado. Algo estava acontecendo até (ou quase até) determinado momento no passado.

Verbos que designam circunstâncias (veja lista na unit 4) normalmente **não podem** ser usados na forma contínua.

It's ~~(it's being)~~ really cold here at the moment.

I've known ~~(I've been knowing)~~ Tom for ages.

### Resumo

■ Forma contínua: algo está acontecendo, não está concluído, é passageiro.

■ Forma simples: estado permanente atual ou ação/situação concluída no passado ou recentemente.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I found this photo when I was looking through some papers. ✓  
 b I was finding this photo when I looked through some papers.
- 1 a What do you read? It looks interesting.  
 b What are you reading? It looks interesting.
- 2 a How many English courses have you taken?  
 b How many English courses have you been taking?
- 3 a Martin didn't seem very happy, did he?  
 b Martin wasn't seeming very happy, was he?
- 4 a Nobody has been phoning me this week.  
 b Nobody has phoned me this week.
- 5 a Jo was angry. We had forgotten her birthday.  
 b Jo was angry. We had been forgetting her birthday.
- 6 a Sorry I'm late. I've been talking to Jim.  
 b Sorry I'm late. I've talked to Jim.

**B Make complete sentences. Use the continuous form where possible.**

When we finally arrived, we / drive for over eight hours.

When we finally arrived, we had been driving for over eight hours.

- 1 I / try to phone Sue all day. Her phone is always engaged.  
 2 It was great to see Richard last week. We / not / see him since we moved.  
 3 Bill and Carol had so many arguments when they / travel round Europe that they / decide to come home.  
 4 My son / work in the local supermarket at the moment – it's a holiday job. He / not / like the work much but he / need the money.  
 5 When we arrived in Manchester, the sun / shine. Obviously it / rain because the ground was still wet.  
 6 I / not / look for a new flat for very long before I / find one I liked.

**C Complete these dialogues with the verbs in the continuous form where possible.**

- 1 A: Where ..... (you/go) when I saw you with Paul on Monday?  
 I ..... (not realize) that you knew each other.  
 B: We ..... (go) to our evening class. We are both learning Spanish.
- 2 A: How ..... (Tom/break) his leg?  
 B: He ..... (fall) off the ladder when he ..... (clean) the windows. He was in a hurry because the football match ..... (already start) and he wanted to watch it.
- 3 A: When our friends ..... (stay) with us, we decided to go for a long walk on Saturday. We ..... (only walk) for ten minutes when it started to rain.  
 B: I know, the weather was terrible, wasn't it? I had just finished cleaning the car when it ..... (start) to rain.
- 4 A: We haven't had a holiday this year. We were planning to go to Canada and America, but then my wife ..... (lose) her job at the paint factory at the beginning of the year, so we ..... (decide) we couldn't afford to go away.  
 B: We haven't been away this year, either. We ..... (save) for the last few months – we want to buy a bigger house.
- 5 A: Sorry, I ..... (not listen). What did you say? Are we meeting the others outside the restaurant or inside?  
 B: Inside, and we're late. They ..... (probably wait) for ages. I hope they ..... (order) a drink.

**D Translate the following sentences. Use the continuous form where possible.**

- 1 Paul está aprendendo espanhol. Ele está estudando há dois meses. O curso acontece (to take place) às segundas-feiras.  
 2 Você ouviu (falar)? O Tom quebrou a perna. Aconteceu na semana passada, quando estava limpando as janelas.  
 3 Eu vinha esperando pela oportunidade de lavar o carro. Eu estava secando-o quando vi as nuvens pretas.  
 4 Minha mulher está procurando novo emprego desde o início do ano. Quando ela perdeu o emprego, ela já havia trabalhado mais de 20 anos na empresa.  
 5 Chegamos atrasados ontem. Nossos amigos já estavam esperando havia meia hora quando finalmente chegamos.



- A: This menu is so big. It's difficult to decide what to eat.  
 B: I ~~will~~ <sup>want</sup> something with fish.  
 A: Hmm. They've got scampi, look here, with chips and salad.  
 B: Oh yes, I hadn't seen that. I ~~take~~ <sup>I'll take</sup> that.  
 A: And for me, I think, lasagne. OK. Now, where's that waiter?  
 B: He ~~is~~ <sup>will be</sup> here in a minute.

**Forma**

- will: forma curta 'll, negação won't

You'll see Tom at the party next week, but Ann won't be there.  
 Will Sonia be there? – Yes, she will. / No, she won't.

**Em inglês, will – em português, o presente**

Em português, usa-se às vezes o presente quando em inglês seria necessário usar will/won't.  
 Eu vejo você amanhã. I'll see (I-see) you tomorrow.

**Previsão**

- A previsão de coisas certas e imutáveis é feita com will e won't.  
 We will know (We-know) the result tomorrow. It will be (it-is) in all the papers.  
 We have to put the clocks back an hour tonight. It'll be (it-is) dark at this time tomorrow.
- Freqüentemente, o ato de prever se baseia na experiência. Ele pode ser restrito/ressalvado pelo uso de perhaps, probably etc.  
 It's Sunday so we (probably) won't have (don't-have) any problems finding somewhere to park.
- will freqüentemente vem depois de I think, I expect, I hope, I'm certain/sure/afraid.  
 I expect I'll see (I-see) Christine at the party this evening.

**Decisões espontâneas**

- will/won't é usado para expressar decisões espontâneas (p.ex., ofertas/propostas).  
 Oh, the phone's ringing. – I'll answer (I-answer) it.  
 Red wine or white? – I won't (don't) have any wine, thanks. I'll just have (I-just-have) water.  
 I'll carry (I-carry) that suitcase for you.

**Disposição**

- will/won't expressam a disposição/falta de disposição para fazer algo (p.ex., promessa, ameaça).  
 Tom will take (takes) us to the airport, I'm sure. Let's ask him.  
 They want to cut down these trees, but I won't (don't) let them do it.  
 I'll be (I-am) there, I promise.  
 I'll throw (I-throw) you out if you say another word.

**Resumo**

- will expressa: previsões; decisões espontâneas (p.ex., ofertas/propostas); disposição.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a My son will study in the USA.  
b My son wants to study in the USA. ✓
- 1 a Can I speak to Tom, please? – Yes, I get him.  
b Can I speak to Tom, please? – Yes, I'll get him.
- 2 a Jamie wants a bicycle for Christmas.  
b Jamie will a bicycle for Christmas.
- 3 a I don't help you if you don't switch the TV off.  
b I won't help you if you don't switch the TV off.
- 4 a I don't want to move but my wife has a new job.  
b I will not move but my wife has a new job.
- 5 a That bag is too heavy for you. I carry it.  
b That bag is too heavy for you. I'll carry it.
- 6 a Cheese or ham sandwich? – I'll have ham, please.  
b Cheese or ham sandwich? – I have ham, please.

**B Make complete sentences using the will future.**

I'm busy. I / help you later. ~~I'm busy.~~ I'll help you later.

- 1 Jo's invited us to her party next week. She / be 18.  
2 My mother / probably / come for Christmas.  
3 If you take this bag, I / carry the heavy suitcase.
- 4 The weather forecast says it / rain tomorrow.  
5 The roads are so busy. I hope we / not be late.  
6 I / post your letter for you if you like.

**C Complete these dialogues with want to or the will future.**

A: I **want to** make a cake as Sue is coming round tomorrow. Did you remember to buy some eggs?

B: Sorry I forgot. I'll go shopping later.

- 1 A: Paul phoned an hour ago. They ..... come this weekend.  
B: Great! I ..... try to get some theatre tickets.
- 2 A: I'm sorry. Gary's gone out. I ..... tell him you called.  
B: Thanks. I ..... try again later.
- 3 A: I've got such a bad headache. I think I ..... call my Spanish teacher to say  
I probably ..... (not) be there this evening.  
B: I ..... get you an aspirin – perhaps if you lie down for an hour, you  
..... feel better.
- 4 A: I ..... have a party for my birthday but I ..... (not)  
make all the food myself. I think I ..... order the food from a party service.  
B: That ..... be expensive. I ..... make the desserts if  
you like.
- 5 A: We've put our house on the market. We ..... buy a bigger one. Jack's mother  
..... be eighty next month and we think it would be better if she lived with us.  
B: Do you really think she ..... agree to move at her age?

**D Translate the following sentences. Where possible, use will.**

- 1 Você tem guarda-chuva? Tenho certeza de que você precisará de um mais tarde.  
2 A Jill quer mais dinheiro. Acho que ela vai procurar logo um novo trabalho.  
3 Não se esqueça de comprar selos. – Não, não vou esquecer!  
4 Que filme vocês querem ver?  
5 Eu vou ajudá-lo mais tarde. Esta tarde eu quero comprar um presente para minha tia. Quando estiver de volta, vou ligar para você.



A: What are your holiday plans? Do you know yet?

B: Oh, yes. We ~~will visit~~ <sup>are going to visit / are visiting</sup> some friends in France.

A: That's nice. So you plan to take the car, I suppose.

B: No, we ~~fly~~ <sup>are going to fly / are flying</sup>. They have two cars, so we won't need ours. Oh, look at those black clouds.

A: Perhaps we should go inside.

B: Yes. ~~It rains~~ <sup>it's going to rain</sup> in a minute.

### going to

- *going to* é usado para indicar algo que, ao que parece, acontecerá.

Look at all this traffic. We're *going to be* late. *Olhe o trânsito! Vamos chegar atrasados.*

Careful! You're *going to* knock my glass over! *Cuidado! Você vai derrubar meu copo!*

- *going to* é usado também para expressar planos e decisões pensadas.

We're *going to* buy a new car. We've already sold our old one.

Jane isn't *going to* stay on at school after July. She's *going to* look for a job.

### Comparação:

I'm *going to* park in the station car park. There's never a space in this road. [= decisão pensada]

*Eu vou estacionar no estacionamento da estação. Nesta rua nunca há vaga.*

Oh, look. There is a space today. OK, I'll *park* here. [= decisão espontânea]

*Veja só. Hoje há uma vaga. Bom, vou estacionar aqui.*

### Present continuous

- O present continuous é usado quando já foram tomadas providências ou feitas combinações referentes ao futuro, ou para expressar que existe um horário preestabelecido.

I'm *meeting* Ann for a meal tomorrow evening. I've booked a table for 7.30 at the Italian restaurant.

I've got a busy week. Tomorrow I'm *painting* the kitchen, and on Friday I'm *doing* the bathroom.

Quando o present continuous se refere ao futuro, ele é usado com uma indicação temporal: p.ex., next week, on Friday, at seven o'clock etc.

- Frequentemente, o present continuous ou *going to* podem ser usados indistintamente, sem diferença de significado.

Next Sunday I'm *meeting* Phil. [= está decidido] / I'm *going to* meet Phil. [= plano]

### Simple present

- O simple present é usado quando algo é preestabelecido por um guia, programa etc.

My train *arrives* at 7.43 and the concert *starts* at 8.

### Resumo

- *going to* = algo está prestes a acontecer: "Estou prevendo isso"
- *going to* = plano ou intenção: "Estou pretendendo isso"
- Present continuous + indicação temporal = plano: "Tomei providências, combinei algo"
- Simple present = futuro programado: "Isso está estabelecido pelo guia, pela programação etc."



## A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?

- a It's Ann's birthday tomorrow. I make a cake.  
 b It's Ann's birthday tomorrow. I'm going to make a cake. ✓

- 1 a Is the film starting at 7.30 or 8 o'clock?  
 b Does the film start at 7.30 or 8 o'clock?  
 2 a What do you do this weekend?  
 b What are you doing this weekend?  
 3 a Are you seeing your family this Christmas?  
 b Do you see your family this Christmas?  
 4 a Hurry up! We're going to miss the bus.  
 b Hurry up! We're missing the bus.  
 5 a The wind blows that tree down soon.  
 b The wind is going to blow that tree down soon.  
 6 a We don't have a holiday this year.  
 b We aren't going to have a holiday this year.

## B Make complete sentences or questions using the present continuous or the simple present.

I / visit my relatives in Australia next month. I'm visiting my relatives in Australia next month.

- 1 I / meet / a friend after work tomorrow. ....  
 2 Jane's train / arrive at 11.30 or 12.30? .....  
 3 We / not have a holiday this summer. We / stay here. ....  
 4 Here is a list of the people we / invite to our wedding. ....  
 5 The concert / start / at 8 o'clock. ....  
 6 What / you do this evening? .....

## C Complete these dialogues using going to or the will future.

A: I'm going to get (get) Ann a CD for her birthday. What about you?

B: I've no idea. I think I'll ask (ask) her what she would like.

- 1 A: Has your son decided what he wants to do when he leaves school?  
 B: Yes. He ..... (not apply) for a place at university.  
 He ..... (travel) round the world for a year!  
 2 A: I ..... (give) you and Sue a lift to the airport if you like.  
 B: Yes, please! I ..... (ring) Sue and tell her.  
 3 A: Look at the time. We ..... (be) late.  
 B: I hope they ..... (not think) that we're not coming.  
 4 A: Dave ..... (buy) tickets for the big football match next month. Do you want one?  
 B: No, thanks. I'm sure they ..... (show) it on TV.  
 5 A: Do you know anyone who wants a winter coat? I ..... (throw) this one away.  
 B: Don't do that. I ..... (take) it to the Red Cross.

## D Translate the following sentences.

- 1 Cuidado! O vaso vai tombar.  
 2 Eu levo (to drive) você se quiser. – Obrigado, mas já está tudo organizado. Nós vamos pegar um táxi.  
 3 Quando começa o filme?  
 4 Nosso chefe vai casar na próxima semana. Nós vamos comprar um avental (apron) como presente de casamento.  
 5 Vou passear. – Boa idéia. Eu vou com você.



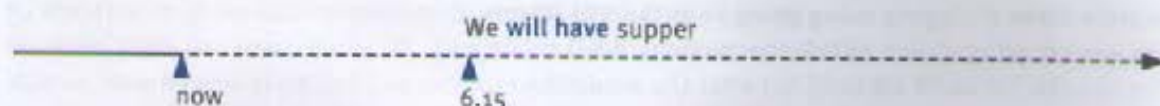
- A: I hate Mondays, but this time next week ~~I'm lying~~ <sup>I will be lying</sup> on a beach in Portugal.  
 B: Lucky you!
- A: The flight is on Saturday, so by Monday I ~~will already spend~~ <sup>will already have spent</sup> one long, lazy day in the sun.  
 B: Don't forget that you have to come back, though!
- A: After four weeks I ~~won't be knowing~~ <sup>won't know</sup> what this place looks like.  
 B: You soon will!

**Forma**

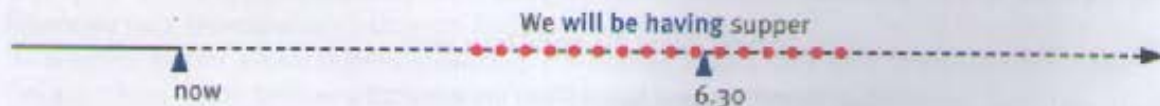
- will + forma contínua: Next week I'll **be enjoying** myself. I **won't be sitting** in the office.  
 will + be ...ing Will you **be travelling** a lot? – Yes, I will. / No, I won't.
- Future perfect: will + have + participio By Friday I **will have finished** my exams. I **won't have heard** the results.  
 Will you **have had** a party? – Yes, I will. / No, I won't.

**Future continuous**

- O future continuous (will + forma contínua) indica que uma ação ou situação passageira que acontecerá em determinado momento do futuro será inacabada, perdurará.



At 6.15 we **will have** supper. [= Às 18h15 vamos começar a jantar.]



At 6.30 we **will be having** supper. [Às 18h30 estaremos jantando.]

Don't phone at 6.30. We'll still **be having** supper ...Estaremos jantando ainda.

If you phone later, my dad **will probably be watching** TV ..., meu pai... estará assistindo à televisão.

- ! O future continuous **não** pode ser usado com verbos como **know**, **have** etc. (veja lista na unit 4).  
 It **will seem** (~~will be seeming~~) strange to go away without the children.

**Future perfect**

- O future perfect (will have ... ed) indica uma ação/situação que (provavelmente) estará concluída em determinado momento no futuro. Palavra sinalizadora freqüente: **by** (até)

We can phone them now, I think. They **will have got up** now.

Podemos ligar para eles. Eles já devem estar de pé agora.

By the end of the holiday we'll probably **have driven** more than 5000 kilometres.

Até o fim das férias, teremos dirigido provavelmente mais de 5 mil quilômetros.

**Resumo**

- will be ...ing: algo estará acontecendo em determinado momento no futuro.
- will have ...ed: algo estará concluído em determinado momento no futuro.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a If you need to phone me next week, I'll be staying at the George Hotel. ✓  
 b If you need to phone me next week, I'll stay at the George Hotel.
- 1 a We're late. The film will have already started by the time we get there.  
 b We're late. The film will already start by the time we get there.
- 2 a Don't call them now. They'll be having lunch.  
 b Don't call them now. They'll have lunch.
- 3 a Next month we'll have known each other for twenty years.  
 b Next month we'll be knowing each other for twenty years.
- 4 a By Easter we will save enough for a trip to Canada.  
 b By Easter we will have saved enough for a trip to Canada.

**B Make complete sentences using the future continuous and the future perfect.**

(I always leave home at 8 o'clock and get to work at 8.45.)

By 8.15 / I / leave home

By 8.15 I will have left home.

By 9.00 / I / arrive at work

By 9.00 I will have arrived at work.

At 9.10 / I / work

At 9.10 I will be working.

- 1 (We have Sunday lunch at 1 o'clock. Sam cooks it and I do the washing up. I usually finish by 2.30.)  
 At 12 o'clock / Sam / cook / lunch .....  
 At 1.10 / we / eat .....  
 At 2.45 / I / do the washing up .....
- 2 (The children leave home at 8.15 and take the bus to school. The first lesson is from 9.00 to 9.45 and the second is from 9.45 to 10.30.)  
 At 8.30 / they / travel to school .....  
 At 9.30 / they / sit in their first lesson .....  
 By 10.40 / they / have two lessons .....
- 3 (It's 11.00 on Monday. My cleaning woman comes on Tuesdays and works from 10.00-1.00, then she goes to my neighbour's.)  
 This time tomorrow my cleaning woman / start work .....  
 By 1.30 she / finish work in my flat .....  
 At 1.30 she / clean my neighbour's flat .....

**C Complete these dialogues with the future continuous and the future perfect. If they are not possible, use will.**

- 1 A: Do you think Sue and Frank ..... (arrive) by the time I get home from work?  
 B: I don't know. I ..... (phone) them and ask when they hope to leave.
- 2 A: I'm sure England ..... (win) the match tomorrow.  
 B: It doesn't really worry me. This time tomorrow I ..... (sit) in the plane on my way to New York.
- 3 A: I think I ..... (ring) Terry and Diane before we go out.  
 B: Don't ring them now. They ..... (eat) dinner.
- 4 A: I ..... (help) you decorate your kitchen when I get back from holiday.  
 B: Thanks, but I hope we ..... (finish) by the time you get back.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 No ano que vem, meus pais estarão casados por 40 anos.  
 2 Amanhã, a esta hora, estarei deitado na praia.  
 3 A Ellen já deve ter chegado. Já são mais de 11.  
 4 Terei lido/acabado de ler o livro até terça. Você pode pegá-lo (to have) então.  
 5 Eu vou ligar amanhã. - Tudo bem, mas não entre sete e oito horas, pois estaremos comendo.



# 18 Perguntas (1): perguntas de "sim" ou "não" e respostas curtas

- Do you play**  
A: ~~Play you~~ poker?  
B: No, I'm afraid not. I don't really play many card games.  
**Do you do**  
A: ~~Do you~~ any sport?  
B: Yes, I do. I play squash in the winter and tennis in the summer. Do you like tennis?  
**I do**  
A: Yes, ~~like~~. I'm a member of the Grün-Weiß club.  
B: How about a game one day? I hope you're not too good!

## Formação de perguntas com e sem do

- Frase afirmativa com verbo auxiliar se transforma em pergunta por inversão de sujeito e verbo.  
Frase afirmativa com verbo principal (exceto be) se transforma em pergunta pelo uso de alguma forma do verbo do (do, does ou did).

Verbos auxiliares para formação dos tempos: **be, have, will**  
Pergunta: verbo auxiliar + sujeito + verbo principal

Tom is coming.	Is Ann coming?
Tom was running.	Was Ann running?
Tom has left.	Has Ann left?
Tom will be late.	Will Ann be late?

Modal verbs: can, should, may, might etc.  
Pergunta: modal verb + sujeito + verbo principal

Tom can come.	Can Ann come?
Tom should wait.	Should Ann wait?

**be** como verbo principal:  
Pergunta: alguma forma de **be** + sujeito

Tom is English.	Is Ann English?
-----------------	-----------------

Verbos principais exceto **be** Pergunta: verbo auxiliar **do/does/did** + sujeito + verbo principal

Tom plays tennis.	Does Ann play tennis?
Tom phoned.	Did Ann phone?

- Perguntas com o verbo principal **have** são formadas com **do/does/did**. Perguntas com **have got** são formadas sem **do/does/did**.

Tom has time.	Does Ann have time?
Tom has got time.	Has Ann got time?

## Respostas curtas

- Responder apenas **Yes** ou **No** é muitas vezes considerado pouco gentil. Por isso, recomenda-se usar sempre a resposta curta que retoma o verbo auxiliar da pergunta.

Is David coming? – Yes, he **is**. / No, he **isn't**.  
Was Ann waiting? – Yes, she **was**. / No, she **wasn't**.  
Has my letter arrived? – Yes, it **has**. / No, it **hasn't**.  
Will it be cold? – Yes, it **will**. / No, it **won't**.  
Can you see? – Yes, I **can**. / No, I **can't**.  
Do you smoke? – Yes, I **do**. / No, I **don't**.  
Does Janet know? – Yes, she **does**. / No, she **doesn't**.  
Did it rain? – Yes, it **did**. / No, it **didn't**.

- Respostas a perguntas formadas com os verbos principais **be** e **have got** retomam esses verbos.

Is Tony here? – Yes, he **is**. / No, he **isn't**.  
Have you got time? – Yes, I **have**. / No, I **haven't**.

## Resumo

- Perguntas com verbo principal: usa-se alguma das formas de **do**.
- Respostas curtas na íntegra são mais polidas: repete-se o verbo auxiliar/modal verb da pergunta.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a Lives David in London?  
b Does David live in London? ✓

- 1 a Do you know what time the film starts?  
b Know you what time the film starts?

- 2 a Have you seen my keys anywhere?  
b You have seen my keys anywhere?

- 3 a Can you play chess? – Yes, I play.  
b Can you play chess? – Yes, I can.

- 4 a Does your son have got his own car?  
b Has your son got his own car?

- 5 a Was it snowing when you left? – Yes, it did.  
b Was it snowing when you left? – Yes, it was.

- 6 a What does your husband do? – He's a doctor.  
b What does your husband? – He's a doctor.

**B Give short answers for the following questions.**

A: Can you play the piano? B: No, I ~~can~~ t.

- 1 A: Do you like your new job? B: Yes, .....  
2 A: Are your parents coming for Christmas? B: Yes, .....  
3 A: Did Paul phone yesterday? B: No, .....  
4 A: Have the children tidied their rooms? B: Yes, .....  
5 A: Does Sue still live in Manchester? B: No, .....

**C Make questions and short answers. Be careful with the different tenses!**

you / have time to help me now? – Yes.

Do you have time to help me now? – Yes, I do.

your husband / go to Leeds last week? – No, he / not.

Did your husband go to Leeds last week? – No, he didn't.

- 1 you / know where the post office is, please? – No, I'm sorry, I / not.

- 2 the children / do their homework yet? – Yes.

- 3 you / go shopping yesterday? – Yes.

- 4 Sally / come tomorrow? – No, I'm afraid she / not.

- 5 Paul / ever be abroad? – No, he / not.

**D Translate the following questions and short answers.**

- 1 Você viu as minhas chaves do carro? – Não.  
2 Você esteve na escola ontem? – Sim.  
3 Vocês vão ao cinema esta noite? – Sim.  
4 O Tom sabe nadar? – Não.  
5 Você tem o endereço novo da Jane? – Sim.



- A: Who ~~did phone~~ <sup>phoned</sup> so late last night?  
 B: It was Julia, a colleague from work.  
 A: What ~~wanted she~~ <sup>did she want</sup>?  
 B: She hasn't got a car today. She asked if she can come with me.  
 A: ~~With who works she?~~ <sup>Who does she work with?</sup> Is she in your team?  
 B: No, she's in export.

**Perguntas *wh-* com verbo principal, com ou sem *do***

- Perguntas com *when*, *where*, *how* e *why* são formadas com alguma das formas de *do*.

	Tom	teaches	English	at the Instituto de Línguas on Wednesday evening.
When does	Tom	teach	English	at the Instituto de Línguas?
Where does	Tom	teach	English	on Wednesday evening?

- Perguntas com *who* são formadas sem *do* se *who* pergunta pelo sujeito, correspondendo em português ao pronome interrogativo "quem". Perguntas com *who* são formadas com *do* se *who* pergunta por um objeto (sintático), correspondendo em português ao pronome interrogativo preposicionado "a quem".

	Tom	teaches	Anja.	
	Who	teaches	Anja?	- Tom. He's the teacher. <i>Quem ensina a Anja?</i>
Who does	Tom	teach?		- Anja. She's a student. <i>A quem o Tom ensina?</i>

*who* = "quem" designa o sujeito da frase, a pessoa que age.

*who* = "a quem" designa o objeto da frase, a pessoa que sofre uma ação.

- Perguntas com *what*, *which* e *how much/many* são formadas sem *do* quando o pronome interrogativo é o sujeito (ou parte do sujeito), mas são formadas com *do* quando o pronome interrogativo é o objeto (ou parte do objeto).

Tom watched some videos with his students last week.

<i>What</i> happened last week?	<i>O que aconteceu na semana passada?</i>
<i>What</i> did Tom do last week?	<i>O que o Tom fez na semana passada?</i>
<i>Which</i> video interested the class most?	<i>Qual vídeo interessou mais à classe?</i>
<i>Which</i> videos did the class watch?	<i>Quais vídeos a classe viu?</i>
<i>How many</i> students watched?	<i>Quantos estudantes assistiram?</i>
<i>How many</i> videos did they watch?	<i>Quantos vídeos eles viram?</i>

**Perguntas com preposições**

- Nessas perguntas, *who... with?* corresponde em português a "com quem?", e *who... to?* corresponde a "para quem?/a quem?".

Anja went sailing with Tom last week.	She introduced him to her friends.
Who did Anja go sailing with?	Who did she introduce him to?
<i>Com que a Anja foi velejar?</i>	<i>Para quem ela o apresentou?</i>

A preposição (nos dois exemplos acima, *with* e *to*) fica na posição em que as preposições costumam ficar: após o verbo e eventualmente após o objeto, e não, como em português, antes do pronome interrogativo.

- Em outras perguntas, a preposição fica na mesma posição.

He is looking for a present for a friend.	Her friend comes from Colombia.
What is he looking for?	Where does her friend come from?

**Resumo**

- *who* = "a quem?/para quem?" forma a pergunta com *do*.  
 ■ A preposição fica no fim da frase, **não** antes do pronome interrogativo.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a Why did you phone Jill yesterday? ✓  
b Why phoned you Jill yesterday?
- 1 a What kind of holidays do you prefer?  
b What kind of holidays prefer you?
- 2 a With who did you go to the cinema?  
b Who did you go to the cinema with?
- 3 a How did Tom break his leg? What did happen?  
b How did Tom break his leg? What happened?
- 4 a Who answered the phone when you called Steve?  
b Who did answer the phone when you called Steve?
- 5 a Who looked after the children while you were away?  
b Who did look after the children while you were away?
- 6 a How many people went to Jane's party?  
b How many people did go to Jane's party?

**B Make questions for these answers.**

When / happen / the accident? – It happened last week.  
*When did the accident happen?*

- 1 Who / Jane / share a flat / with? – She lives with two friends.  
2 How many people / come to your birthday party last week? – Over thirty.  
3 What wine / go / best with beef: red or white? – Red wine, I think.  
4 Who / help you / with your homework? – Nobody, I did it myself!  
5 What / normally happen / at Christmas in your office? – We usually all go out for dinner.

**C Make questions for these answers.**

A: What did you do yesterday evening?  
B: I went to the opera.

- 1 A: Who .....?  
B: I went with a colleague.
- 2 A: Who .....?  
B: My colleague paid for the tickets.
- 3 A: What ..... after the opera?  
B: We met some friends at the theatre, so we all went for a drink.
- 4 A: How many of you ..... altogether?  
B: There were six of us.
- 5 A: Who ..... in the pub?  
B: I sat next to Paul.
- 6 A: What .....?  
B: We talked about his new flat.

**D Translate the following questions.**

- 1 O que aconteceu na semana passada? Como ocorreu o acidente?  
2 Quem ligou tão tarde ontem?  
3 Com quem você foi fazer compras ontem?  
4 Quem lhe mandou este cartão-postal?  
5 Para quem você escreveu quando esteve em férias?



## 20 Perguntas (3): question tags

- A: I expect you're ready for a cup of coffee, *aren't you?*  
B: Yes, please. That would be lovely.  
A: You take sugar, *don't you?*  
B: Yes, please. Three spoonfuls.  
A: Three! Your dentist will get rich from you, *won't she?*  
B: She's rich enough already. I just like it sweet.

### Forma

- As question tags (perguntas de confirmação) correspondem a "não é?". São formadas pela repetição do verbo auxiliar.

You're learning Spanish, *aren't you?*

She must be Italian, *mustn't she?*

Ann has been to Ireland, *hasn't she?*

Tom can't speak Chinese, *can he?*

It won't be cold there in May, *will it?*

Um verbo auxiliar/modal verb afirmativo (p.ex., has) fica no fim da frase na sua forma negativa (hasn't).  
Um verbo auxiliar/modal verb negativo (p.ex., can't) fica no fim da frase na sua forma afirmativa (can).

- Sem a presença de um verbo auxiliar/modal verb na pergunta, a question tag é formada com alguma das formas de do.

You read a lot, *don't you?*

They flew, *didn't they?*

You don't watch much TV, *do you?*

They didn't go by car, *did they?*

Tom plays tennis, *doesn't he?*

He doesn't play hockey, *does he?*

- Observe duas exceções:

1. I am late, *aren't I (amn't-I)?*

2. Let's (= Let us) go, *shall we?*

I am getting better, *aren't I (amn't-I)?*

### Entonação e uso

You still love me, *don't you?*

I've only got \$20. It won't cost too much, *will it?*

Tom doesn't really speak Arabic, *does he?*

Ann drives a VW, *doesn't she?* She's got a Golf.

You don't need me, *do you?* I can see that you have lots of help already.

A subida da melodia frasal no fim da frase significa: "Não tenho certeza. Diga-me se isso é verdade".  
Ou às vezes expressa surpresa: "Isso me surpreende. É verdade?"

A descida da melodia frasal no fim da frase significa: "Isso eu já sei, na verdade. Quero que você me diga que tenho razão".

### Resumo

- Question tags são inversamente refletidas: frase afirmativa com question tag negativa, e vice-versa.
- Frase com verbo auxiliar/modal verb: o verbo é repetido na question tag.
- Frase sem verbo auxiliar/modal verb: alguma das formas de do é usada na question tag.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a You weren't at work yesterday, were you? ✓  
 b You weren't at work yesterday, was you?
- 1 a You won't be late, will you?  
 b You won't be late, won't you?
- 2 a You don't mind if I don't come, do you?  
 b You don't mind if I don't come, don't you?
- 3 a I'm wrong, am not I?  
 b I'm wrong, aren't I?
- 4 a They haven't got time, have they?  
 b They don't have time, have they?
- 5 a He's been very busy lately, isn't he?  
 b He's been very busy lately, hasn't he?
- 6 a I'm not going to pass the exam, am I?  
 b I'm not going to pass the exam, are I?

**B Add question tags to these questions.**

You weren't angry with me, ~~were~~ you?

- 1 I've told you about my holiday, .....?  
 2 It's much warmer today, .....?  
 3 You don't really expect him to phone, .....?  
 4 You live next door to Bill, .....?  
 5 Your son went to school with Jenny, .....?  
 6 I'm asking too many questions, .....?

**C Make questions with question tags for these answers.**

A: You ~~didn't~~ stay at home yesterday, ~~did~~ you?

B: No, of course I didn't stay at home. I went to Jane's party.

- 1 A: You ..... with me, .....?  
 B: No, I'm not angry. I just wish you had told me sooner.
- 2 A: Jackie ..... a new job, .....?  
 B: Yes, she has. She found it through a friend.
- 3 A: The children ..... in the garden, .....?  
 B: Yes, they are. Look – they're playing behind the trees.
- 4 A: You ..... upset if I don't come to your wedding, .....?  
 B: No, of course I won't. I understand that it's a long way for you to come.
- 5 A: You ..... lend me ten euros, .....?  
 B: Well, I could. But what about the ten euros I lent you last week?
- 6 A: Paul ..... next week, .....?  
 B: Yes, that's right. He's moving on Thursday.

**D Translate the following questions.**

- 1 Você virá amanhã, não?  
 2 Isso foi muito caro, não foi?  
 3 O John não telefonou ontem, telefonou?  
 4 Vocês não estão morando aqui há muito tempo, estão?  
 5 O livro é muito interessante, não é?



## 21 A voz passiva (1)

- A: These photos are of Morely Road, aren't they? When <sup>were</sup> ~~are~~ they taken?  
B: Oh, a long time ago. Fifteen or twenty years ago.  
A: A lot of new buildings <sup>have been built</sup> ~~are built~~ since then.  
B: Yes, the Barton Hotel, for example.  
A: That was opened <sup>by</sup> ~~from~~ a TV star. Do you remember?  
B: Oh yes, that's right. Someone from that Saturday soap opera, wasn't it?

### Forma

- A voz passiva (em inglês, the passive) é formada com alguma das formas de be + particípio.

Simple present	English <b>is spoken</b> all over the world. <i>O inglês é falado...</i>
Simple past	The letter <b>was posted</b> in Hamburg. <i>A carta foi enviada...</i>
Present perfect	How many copies <b>have been made</b> ? <i>Quantas cópias foram feitas?</i>
Past perfect	The Mercedes <b>had been stolen</b> earlier. <i>O Mercedes havia sido roubado...</i>
Future com will	Your questions <b>will be answered</b> later. <i>Suas perguntas serão respondidas...</i>
- be answered (no último exemplo) é a forma infinitiva da voz passiva. É usada também depois de modal verbs (can, must, may, might, should etc.).  
All bags **must be checked**. ...*têm de ser controladas*.  
Messages **can be left** at reception. ...*podem ser deixadas*.

### Uso

- Frases na voz ativa expressam o que alguém (ou algo) faz. Frases na voz passiva expressam o que acontece a alguém (ou a algo).  
Frase na voz ativa: Some hooligans **attacked** me. *Alguns torcedores selvagens me atacaram.*  
Frase na voz passiva: I **was attacked** from behind. *Eu fui atacado pelas costas.*
- Em frases na voz passiva, quem ou o que age pode ser introduzido pela preposição by.  
I **was attacked by** hooligans. *Eu fui atacado por torcedores selvagens.*  
A maioria das frases na voz passiva não menciona o agente da passiva, pois com frequência a voz passiva é usada justamente porque o agente é desconhecido, está evidente ou não é importante.  
The road **has been closed**. [Só é importante dizer que a via está interrompida – quem ou o que a interrompeu não é importante.]  
Oh look, a window **has been broken**. [Não se sabe quem quebrou a janela.]  
The man **was arrested**. [Quem efetuou a prisão – a polícia – está evidente e não precisa ser mencionado.]
- Frases inglesas na voz passiva correspondem a construções em português com "se".  
Squash **is played** indoors. *Squash joga-se em espaços internos.*  
Telegrams **are delivered** straightaway. *Entregam-se os telegramas imediatamente.*  
I **was told** Tom is coming. *Disseram-me que o Tom está vindo.*

### Resumo

- Formação da voz passiva: be + particípio (p.ex., is eaten, was made)
- "por" = by: He **was bitten** for a dog.
- Frases com "se": freqüentemente voz passiva em inglês



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a This book is written by Charles Dickens.  
b This book was written by Charles Dickens. ✓
- 1 a Orders can made by phone.  
b Orders can be made by phone.
- 2 a Talks will hold in Washington next week.  
b Talks will be held in Washington next week.
- 3 a Have you got any books by Hemingway?  
b Have you got any books from Hemingway?
- 4 a The castle is built in the eighteenth century.  
b The castle was built in the eighteenth century.
- 5 a The front door should locked in the evening.  
b The front door should be locked in the evening.
- 6 a My bicycle has been stolen.  
b My bicycle is stolen.

**B Make passive sentences.**

This church / build / in 1886. ~~This church was built in 1886.~~

- 1 The Sydney Opera House / design / a Danish architect. ....
- 2 The new art gallery / open / next week / the Queen. ....
- 3 'Travelled' / spell / with one 'l' in American English. ....
- 4 Bags / must not / take / into the museum. ....
- 5 A lot of people / kill / in road accidents so far this year. ....

**C Make questions for these answers.**

A: When / the church / build? ~~When was the church built?~~

B: In 1682.

- 1 A: What / make / in this factory? .....  
B: Electronic goods.
- 2 A: When / new airport / build? .....  
B: Next year, I think.
- 3 A: How long ago / new concert hall / open? .....  
B: Three years ago.
- 4 A: How many people / invite / so far? .....  
B: Over thirty.
- 5 A: How often / elections / hold in Great Britain? .....  
B: Every five years.
- 6 A: When / your car / steal? .....  
B: Last week.

**D Translate the following sentences using the passive.**

- 1 Como esta palavra é pronunciada?
- 2 Quando esta ponte foi construída?
- 3 Dez pessoas foram feridas num acidente ontem.
- 4 Uma decisão será tomada na próxima semana.
- 5 Podem-se comprar cartões telefônicos em quase qualquer lugar.





A: What did you see when you went to the film studios?

B: Well, ~~us was given~~ <sup>we were given</sup> a guided tour of the whole place.

A: That sounds good.

B: And ~~us was shown~~ <sup>we were shown</sup> how they make an episode of a soap opera.

A: Really? I bet that was interesting.

B: Yes, it was. Actually, the Christmas episode ~~was just made~~ <sup>was just being made</sup>.

## A forma contínua da voz passiva

- Forma-se o contínuo da voz passiva com alguma das formas de be + being + particípio.

A forma contínua da passiva indica (como também na voz ativa) algo que está acontecendo, que está perdurando, que não está concluído, que é passageiro.

Forma contínua no presente

Voz ativa: am/are/is ...ing

Voz passiva: am/are/is + being + particípio

Tim had an accident last week. His car is now at the garage.

They are repairing it.

It is being repaired. *Está sendo consertado.*

Forma contínua no passado

Voz ativa: was/were ...ing

Voz passiva: was/were + being + particípio

When we arrived, the hotel still wasn't finished.

They were still painting the rooms.

The rooms were still being painted. *As salas ainda estavam sendo pintadas.*

## A voz passiva de verbos com dois objetos

- Certos verbos podem atrelar dois objetos: um objeto direto (geralmente uma coisa que é dada, enviada etc.) e um objeto indireto (geralmente uma pessoa que recebe algo).

My mother gave me this ring on my 18th birthday.

We have shown him all 30 photos, but he doesn't recognize the man.

- Nesse tipo de frase, com verbos na voz passiva que pedem dois objetos, a pessoa pode se tornar o sujeito – o que em português não é possível.

I (Me) was given this ring by my mother. *A mim foi dado este anel pela minha mãe.*

= This ring was given to me by my mother. *Este anel me foi dado pela minha mãe.*

He has (Him-have) been shown all 30 photos. *Foram-lhe mostradas as 30 fotos.*

= All 30 photos have been shown to him. *As 30 fotos foram-lhe mostradas.*

- Entre os verbos que permitem que a pessoa se torne sujeito da frase na voz passiva, estão:

ask buy give lend offer pay promise sell send show teach tell



Com os verbos describe, explain, report e suggest, apenas uma coisa pode ser sujeito da frase na voz passiva.

They explained the problem to us. The problem was explained to us. ~~We were explained the problem.~~

## Perguntas wh- na voz passiva com by

- Posição na frase: by fica no fim, não no início da frase.

Who were these photos taken by? *Essas fotos foram feitas por quem?*

Who was the book written by? *Esse livro foi escrito por quem?*



## Resumo

- is being watched, were being cooked = forma contínua da voz passiva (algo está acontecendo)
- I was given = "Foi-me dado": a pessoa torna-se sujeito em frases passivas com give, send, show, tell etc.
- Who is this by? = "Isso foi (escrito/composto etc.) por quem?": by está no fim da frase.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a The bridge was closed yesterday because it was repaired.  
 b The bridge was closed yesterday because it was being repaired. ✓
- 1 a Who was this church built by?  
 b By who was this church built?
- 2 a Can I help you or are you served?  
 b Can I help you or are you being served?
- 3 a He has been asked to make a speech.  
 b Him has been asked to make a speech.
- 4 a A new shopping centre is built there.  
 b A new shopping centre is being built there.
- 5 a Your car isn't ready, sir. It is still repaired.  
 b Your car isn't ready, sir. It is still being repaired.
- 6 a I was given a warm welcome when I arrived.  
 b I was being given a warm welcome when I arrived.

**B Make passive sentences or questions.**

Last year they sent her to the Berlin office for two months.  
 Last year she ~~was sent to the Berlin office for two months~~.

- 1 Nobody told me about the meeting.  
 I .....
- 2 How much did they pay you?  
 How much .....
- 3 Has anyone explained the new computer program to you?  
 Has the computer program .....
- 4 They will show the royal wedding on TV.  
 The royal wedding .....
- 5 Someone must write the letter this week.  
 The letter .....
- 6 They have asked me to help at the school Christmas party.  
 I .....

**C Make passive questions for these answers.**

Who / the new concert hall / open / last week? – By the Queen.  
 Who ~~was the new concert hall opened by last week?~~

- 1 David / offer / a place at university yet? – No, not yet.
- 2 Why / the flight / cancel / yesterday? – Because of fog.
- 3 When / the book / be published? – Next year.
- 4 What / build / here? – A new school. It's nearly finished.
- 5 Who / this book / write? – By Agatha Christie.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Nosso novo sofá acabou de ser entregue.
- 2 Na semana passada me foi oferecido um trabalho em outro departamento.
- 3 Posso ajudá-la? – Não, muito obrigada. Já estou sendo atendida.
- 4 Quando chegamos ao hotel, nosso quarto estava sendo limpo.
- 5 No momento, tudo está sendo feito para solucionar o problema.



A: How was the French holiday?

B: Fine. I ~~can~~ <sup>can't sail</sup> now. I did a course there.

A: With a French trainer?

B: Yes, but she spoke English. ~~Can you French?~~ <sup>Can you speak French?</sup>

A: No, I can't. But a lot of French people speak English, don't they?

B: Yes, they do. One day I needed some medicine at a chemist's and ~~could~~ <sup>was able to</sup> ask for it in English.

### "poder", "saber", "conseguir": *can*, *be able to*

- *can* não existe no present perfect nem no future. Esses tempos são formados com a forma substitutiva *be able to*.

Simple present                      I can speak French. I can't speak Italian. (*não*) sei

Simple past                          At six she could read. She couldn't swim. (*não*) sabia

He was able to call the police because he had a mobile phone with him. *conseguiu*

Present perfect                    I have been able to find Tom. I haven't been able to find Jill. (*não*) *consegui*

Future                                We will be able to meet. We won't be able to talk long. (*não*) *poderemos*

- *can/can't* vem com infinitivo sem *to*.

- No simple past, geralmente se usa *could* para expressar uma capacidade/habilidade.  
I could swim when I was four.

Para indicar que alguém conseguiu algo numa única situação, usa-se *was/were able to*. Em perguntas e frases negativas, *could* pode também ser usado.

Luckily I was able to (~~could~~) find a shop that was still open.

Could you find / Were you able to find a shop that was still open?

I couldn't find / wasn't able to find a shop that was still open.

- *can* é usado para oferecer ou propor algo com vistas ao futuro, agora.  
Today is not possible, but we can meet tomorrow if you like.

Se a capacidade/habilidade de fazer algo ainda não estiver dada, deve-se usar *will be able to*.  
He's broken his leg, but he will be able to (~~can~~) walk again soon.

- A não ser em respostas curtas (p. ex., Yes, I can), *can* não pode ficar sozinho (isto é, sem outro verbo).  
I can speak French (~~can French~~). *Eu sei francês.*  
I don't cook very often. My husband can do it (~~can it~~) better. *Meu marido sabe isso melhor.*

### Verbos de percepção sensorial

- Esses verbos – *see*, *hear*, *smell*, *taste* e *touch* – são geralmente usados com *can* ou *could* para expressar uma percepção momentânea.  
I can see/hear/smell the sea. *Eu vejo/ouço/sinto o mar.*  
I could taste something bitter in the soup. *Eu senti algo amargo na sopa.*

### Resumo

- *can* tem somente duas formas: *can* (simple present) e *could* (simple past); outras formas temporais: *be able to*.
- simple past = *could* somente em afirmações genéricas; o que se consegue uma única vez = *was/were able to*
- com referência ao futuro: *can* para ofertas e propostas; fora isso, *will be able to*
- *see*, *hear*, *smell*, *taste* e *touch*: com *can/could* em casos de percepção sensorial única



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I can understand more after my course in London next month.  
 b I'll be able to understand more after my course in London next month. ✓
- 1 a I could see Tom when I was in London.  
 b I was able to see Tom when I was in London.
- 2 a What see you in the picture?  
 b What can you see in the picture?
- 3 a Will you be able to come later? – Yes, I will.  
 b Will you be able to come later? – Yes, I be able.
- 4 a My sister can Spanish.  
 b My sister can speak Spanish.
- 5 a Were you able to go to Jane's party? – Yes, I was.  
 b Was you able to go to Jane's party? – Yes, I was.
- 6 a I can come tomorrow.  
 b I can to come tomorrow.

**B Complete the answers to these questions using can/can't, could/couldn't or a form of be able to.**

- 1 A: Did you get the chance to go to the Opera House when you were in Sydney?  
 B: Yes, we were so lucky! We ..... get tickets for a modern ballet.
- 2 A: Have you invited Carol and Jane to the party?  
 B: Well, I left a message on Carol's answering machine yesterday but I ..... speak to Jane yet – perhaps she's away.
- 3 A: How was your concert yesterday – it was the first performance, wasn't it?  
 B: It went well but I was so nervous. I ..... enjoy it!
- 4 A: How does your sister feel about her husband's new job in the States?  
 B: Well, she's a bit worried about finding work herself. She ..... work when she's got a green card.
- 5 A: What was your hotel like?  
 B: Fantastic. We had a wonderful view. We ..... see the sea from our window.

**C Make questions for these answers. Use can, could or a form of be able to.**

- 1 A: ..... French?  
 B: No, I can't really. I only had French lessons for a couple of years at school.
- 2 A: ..... when you were a child?  
 B: No, I couldn't. I learned to swim when I was forty.
- 3 A: How was the flight? ..... on the plane?  
 B: Yes, I was. I slept really well.
- 4 A: Doctor, how bad is my son's injury? ..... football again?  
 B: Yes, I'm sure he will. But he must be patient – it will take time.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Você conseguiu trabalhar no jardim no fim de semana passado ou o tempo estava ruim demais?  
 2 Eu vejo as montanhas pela minha janela.  
 3 Sinto muito. Ainda não consegui traduzir sua carta.  
 4 Por favor, ajude-me. Não consigo fazê-lo sozinho (*on my own*).  
 5 Você já conseguiu falar com seu chefe?



- A: Back from the dentist already?  
 B: Yes, I ~~hadn't to~~ <sup>didn't have to</sup> wait long.  
 A: What did she say? Are your teeth OK?  
 B: Well, she ~~must~~ <sup>had to</sup> put a new filling in this tooth here.  
 A: Oh. But the other teeth are OK?  
 B: Yes, I ~~mustn't~~ <sup>needn't / don't have to</sup> go back again till next year.

## "ter de", "dever", "precisar", "ser necessário": must, have to

- must não tem nenhuma forma no passado, nem no present perfect, nem no future. O verbo substitutivo é have to.

Simple present	I must / have to call Bill. <i>Eu tenho de ligar para o Bill.</i>
Simple past	We had to (must) phone the doctor. <i>Era necessário ligar para o médico.</i>
Present perfect	I have/haven't had to do this often. <i>Eu (não) precisei fazer isso muitas vezes.</i>
Future	You will/won't have to wait. <i>Você não (terá) que esperar.</i>

## mustn't – needn't – don't have to

- "não precisar" é expresso por needn't ou por don't/doesn't have to.  
 I needn't go / don't have to (mustn't) go yet. *Eu ainda não tenho de/não preciso ir agora.*

must not corresponde a "não dever" e só pode ser usado no simple present:

- You needn't worry. *Você não precisa se preocupar.*  
 I don't have to work on Thursday. It's a holiday. *Eu não preciso trabalhar...*  
 I mustn't forget. It's Ann's birthday tomorrow. *Não posso esquecer.*

## Perguntas e negação com have to

- As negações e perguntas com have to formam presente e passado com alguma das formas de do.  
 I don't have to go yet. – Does Ann have to go? – Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.  
 We didn't have to wait long. – Did you have to call the police? – Yes, we did. / No, we didn't.

## Usamos must ou have to no presente?

- O uso de must e have to sobrepõe-se no presente.

Erros podem ser evitados da seguinte maneira:

Ordem: must

Parent: You must be home by 9:30. All bags must be left at reception.

Para expressar os próprios sentimentos (a convicção pessoal): must

We must meet more often. I must give up smoking.

Para relatar o que está sendo/foi ordenado por outros: have to

Child: My dad is awful. I have to be home by 9:30.

We have to pay at the machine before we fetch the car.

Perguntas: have to

Do we have to pay now?

Where do we have to park?

## Resumo

- must usa-se apenas no simple present; nos outros tempos, usa-se have to.
- needn't = "não precisar"; mustn't = "não dever"
- have to: pergunta e negação com do
- must = "eu determino isso" ou "eu acho isso necessário"; have to = "outrem determina isso"



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I didn't have to work late yesterday. ✓  
b I hadn't to work late yesterday.
- 1 a I mustn't forget to post these letters.  
b I don't have to forget to post these letters.
- 2 a You needn't come if you don't have time.  
b You mustn't come if you don't have time.
- 3 a Where have we to buy our tickets?  
b Where do we have to buy our tickets?
- 4 a Does Ann have to work tomorrow? – Yes, she does.  
b Does Ann have to work tomorrow? – Yes, she has.
- 5 a You don't have to smoke on the underground.  
b You mustn't smoke on the underground.
- 6 a Had you to wait long at the doctor's?  
b Did you have to wait long at the doctor's?

**B Complete these sentences with *mustn't* or *don't/doesn't have to*.**

You ~~mustn't~~ be late.

- 1 My husband ..... go to hospital. Thank goodness!
- 2 You ..... tell anyone what I told you. It's a secret.
- 3 I ..... go to work tomorrow.
- 4 I ..... forget to go to the bank.
- 5 You ..... wash that pullover in the washing machine. It says 'hand wash only'.
- 6 My sister ..... worry about money. Her husband is very rich.

**C Make questions for these answers. Use a form of *have to*.**

A: Did you have to wait long?

B: No, I didn't. Jane's train was on time.

- 1 A: What time does the concert start? When ..... leave?  
B: Well, we shouldn't leave too late otherwise we won't get a parking space.
- 2 A: ..... work last weekend?  
B: No, I didn't, but I have to work next weekend.
- 3 A: ..... go now?  
B: Yes, I'm sorry, I do. I have to get up so early tomorrow.
- 4 A: Do you think we ..... open our suitcases when we get to Moscow?  
B: Well, the last time I was there we did.
- 5 A: ..... do a written test at any of the interviews you've been to?  
B: No, I haven't. So far they've just asked me a few questions to test my French.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Eu realmente preciso estudar mais gramática.
- 2 Você tinha libras (esterlinas) suficientes nas férias ou você teve que trocar mais dinheiro?
- 3 Meu médico é bom, mas precisa-se esperar (muito tempo) sempre.
- 4 Nós temos que ir com você?
- 5 Eu não preciso trabalhar amanhã.



A: I see it's raining again.

B: Yes, but it's still early. It ~~can~~ <sup>may/might/could</sup> clear up later.

A: I was planning to go to the sea.

B: Well, the weather ~~couldn't~~ <sup>may not/might not</sup> be so bad down there. It's often better on the coast.

A: Yes. Actually, if I go, could I borrow your new camera?

B: Yes, you ~~could~~ <sup>can/may</sup>. But be careful with it, please.

### Expressar permissão

- can ou may são usados para formular um pedido polido ou dar/negar permissão. May é mais formal do que can.

Can/May I open the window, please? – Yes, of course you can/may. / No, I'm sorry, you can't/may not.  
You wanted to borrow my printer. OK, you can/may.

- could pode ser usado em pedidos, mas não é usado para dar/negar permissão.

Could I look at your map, please? – Yes, you can/may (could).  
I'm sorry, but you can't (couldn't) park here. This is private.

### Expressar possibilidade e incerteza

- may/might/could (mas não can) expressam que algo é/será possivelmente o caso.

A: The phone's ringing.

B: It may/might/could (can) be for me. I'm expecting a call. *Esta ligação pode /poderia ser para mim.*

A: How much will the repair cost?

B: I don't know. But it may/might/could (can) be quite expensive. *Isso pode /poderá ser bastante caro.*

- may/might not (não can't/couldn't) expressa que algo possivelmente não é o caso.

A: The phone is ringing. Aren't you going to answer it?

B: It may/might not be for me. Perhaps it's for you. [= É possível que a ligação não seja para mim.]

Mas:

A: Look, the postman's coming with a big parcel. Are you expecting something?

B: No, it can't/couldn't be for me. I'm not expecting anything.

[= É impossível que o pacote seja para mim.]

### Resumo

- Pedir licença/permissão ("posso?"): can?, may? ou could?
- Dar e negar uma permissão ("você pode/não pode"): can('t), may (not); mas não could (not)
- "isto é possivelmente o caso/ é possível": may, might, could; mas não can
- "isto, possivelmente, não é o caso / é possível que isto não seja o caso": may not, might not; mas não can't, couldn't



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I'm not sure – the hotel can be more expensive in the high season.  
 b I'm not sure – the hotel may be more expensive in the high season. ✓

- 1 a May I to smoke, please?  
 b May I smoke, please?
- 2 a Sue can know Jane's new address.  
 b Sue might know Jane's new address.
- 3 a That book can't be mine. I left mine at home.  
 b That book may not be mine. I left mine at home.
- 4 a Could I go now, please? – Yes, you can, of course.  
 b Could I go now, please? – Yes, you could, of course.
- 5 a That might be for me – I've ordered a pizza.  
 b That can be for me – I've ordered a pizza.
- 6 a Sue doesn't may come this evening.  
 b Sue may not come this evening.

**B Which sentences are correct: a, b, or a and b?**

- a I may be late this evening. ✓  
 b I might be late this evening. ✓

- 1 a Can I borrow your dictionary, please?  
 b May I borrow your dictionary, please?
- 2 a Where's John? – I don't know. He can be at lunch.  
 b Where's John? – I don't know. He may be at lunch.
- 3 a Could I bring my sister to your party on Saturday? – Yes, you can – no problem.  
 b Can I bring my sister to your party on Saturday? – Yes, you can – no problem.
- 4 a Who's Sally talking to? – I'm not sure. It can be her sister.  
 b Who's Sally talking to? – I'm not sure. It could be her sister.
- 5 a That phone call may be for me. Sue said she would ring about 10 o'clock.  
 b That phone call might be for me. Sue said she would ring about 10 o'clock.

**C Complete the dialogues using can, can't or may (not).**

A: Can I use your phone, please? B: Yes, of course you **can**.

- 1 A: Who's that at the door?  
 B: It ..... be Tom. He said he'd call round if he had time.
- 2 A: That person over there looks just like Dave. Is it his brother?  
 B: No, it ..... be. Dave hasn't got any brothers or sisters.
- 3 A: What's the matter? You ..... be tired – you went to bed so early yesterday!  
 B: I don't know. It ..... be the air in this room.
- 4 A: Drive carefully. The roads ..... be icy.  
 B: Well, I ..... go by car anyway. It's probably safer by train.
- 5 A: ..... I borrow this book, please?  
 B: Of course, you can. You ..... take this one too if you like.

**D Translate the following sentences. Use can, can't, could, may or might.**

- 1 Posso fechar a janela?  
 2 Sinto muito, mas você não pode deixar sua bicicleta aqui.  
 3 Posso ligar de volta mais tarde? – Claro que o senhor pode.  
 4 A carta poderia ser de Paul – ele disse que me escreveria.  
 5 Pegue um guarda-chuva. É possível que chova mais tarde.



A: What shall we do this evening?

B: I suggest ~~to stay~~ <sup>staying</sup> at home.

A: Not again. You're so boring. Come on, let's go to the pub.

B: I don't like ~~that we go~~ <sup>going</sup> to the pub all the time. You just want to see all your football mates.

A: No, no. I want to go there with you.

B: I don't believe you. Can't you imagine ~~to stay~~ <sup>staying</sup> at home and ~~watch~~ <sup>watching</sup> a nice video?

### Gerúndio como substantivo

- O gerúndio (em inglês, *gerund*) apresenta a terminação -ing.

Em inglês, o gerúndio pode ser sujeito.

Sport is good for you. **Swimming** is good for you. (*Fazer*) esporte é saudável. *Nadar* é saudável.

### Gerúndio após determinados verbos

- Em inglês, o gerúndio pode ser objeto de certos verbos.

I've left the choir. I miss **singing**. *Saí do coral. Sinto falta de cantar.*

I have to practise **parking** for my driving test. *Preciso treinar baliza para tirar a carteira de motorista.*

Freqüentemente, a forma verbal com -ing (o gerúndio) corresponde a um infinitivo.

Can you imagine **living** (~~to live~~) in Alaska? *Você pode imaginar viver no Alasca?*

You risk **losing** (~~to lose~~) all your money. *Você se arrisca a perder todo o seu dinheiro.*

I suggest **leaving** (~~to leave~~) early. *Sugiro sair cedo.*

Do you mind **waiting** (~~to wait~~)? *Você se importa de esperar?*

- Os seguintes verbos pedem gerúndio como objeto:

like\* gostar de\*  
love\* gostar muito de\*  
enjoy gostar de  
dislike não gostar de  
hate\* detestar\*  
prefer\* preferir\*  
(not) mind (não) importar-se

start\* começar\*  
begin\* começar\*  
continue continuar  
carry on continuar  
keep (on) continuar  
finish terminar  
stop parar  
give up desistir

admit admitir  
avoid evitar  
imagine imaginar  
mention mencionar  
miss sentir falta de  
practise treinar  
recommend recomendar  
suggest sugerir

Os verbos com asterisco podem também pedir infinitivo.

would like (*gostaria*), would love (*adoraria*), would prefer (*preferiria*),

would hate (*destestaria*) pedem sempre to + infinitivo.

I'd like to ask (**asking**) a question. *Eu gostaria de fazer uma pergunta.*

- Muitos outros verbos pedem também sempre infinitivo: *decide, hope, learn, plan, want, offer, promise, afford (ter recursos para), manage (conseguir).*

### Resumo

- -ing é usado com determinados verbos, sobretudo aqueles que expressam gosto ou aversão, continuação ou fim.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a My father has given up to smoke.  
b My father has given up smoking. ✓
- 1 a I suggest to meet at six o'clock.  
b I suggest meeting at six o'clock.
- 2 a Could you imagine to live in the USA?  
b Could you imagine living in the USA?
- 3 a We would like to go to Canada next year.  
b We would like going to Canada next year.
- 4 a Jane can't afford to go on holiday this year.  
b Jane can't afford going on holiday this year.
- 5 a I don't mind to help you at the weekend.  
b I don't mind helping you at the weekend.
- 6 a I've managed to find the book you wanted.  
b I've managed finding the book you wanted.

**B Rewrite these sentences using the gerund.**

Sue said, "Let's go to the cinema."

Sue suggested **going to the cinema**.

- 1 Paul said, "We can go to the theatre if you want."  
Paul said he didn't mind .....
- 2 Joe said, "I stole the bike."  
Joe admitted .....
- 3 Jenny said, "I think it would be nice to live in Australia."  
Jenny said she could imagine .....
- 4 Mary, "You should book early at the new Indian restaurant."  
Mary recommended .....
- 5 Dave, "I saw Carol at the party."  
Dave mentioned .....
- 6 Jane, "I don't go to work by car any more."  
Jane has stopped .....

**C Complete these dialogues using the gerund or the infinitive.**

A: Carol has suggested **going (go)** to the theatre on Saturday.

B: I really don't want **to go (go)** out. I'd prefer **to spend (spend)** the evening at home.

- 1 A: What have you decided ..... **(do)** about your job?  
B: I'm going to carry on ..... **(work)** here at the moment. Of course, I'd like  
..... **(have)** more money, but I haven't managed .....  
**(speak)** to the boss yet.
- 2 A: Would you mind ..... **(turn off)** the TV, please? I can't concentrate.  
B: Then I suggest ..... **(go)** into the dining room to work! You know I want  
..... **(watch)** this programme.
- 3 A: I think we should leave early tomorrow to avoid ..... **(drive)** in the rush hour.  
B: You know I hate ..... **(get up)** early. I'd prefer ..... **(go)**  
when the rush hour's over.
- 4 A: Have you learned ..... **(use)** the new software yet?  
B: Unfortunately not, but my boss has promised ..... **(send)** me on a course.
- 5 A: We can't afford ..... **(go)** abroad for a holiday this year, so we've planned  
..... **(go)** camping.  
B: I'm sure you'll miss ..... **(have)** a comfortable bed – I can't imagine you  
..... **(sleep)** in a tent!

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Sugiro que se escreva uma carta para a firma.  
2 Meu vizinho ofereceu-se para consertar meu carro.  
3 Não posso me imaginar saindo desta área, mas minha mulher quer se mudar.  
4 Nós gostaríamos de reservar uma mesa. Gostamos de sentar perto da janela.  
5 A Sue e o Tom prometeram ser pontuais.



## 27 Gerúndio (2): preposição + ...ing

A: I see you've got an invitation to a class reunion: "Class 6B 15 years later".

B: Yes. I'm looking forward to <sup>seeing</sup> my old school friends again.

A: Where is it?

B: At the school. Someone had the idea <sup>of eating</sup> to eat in the school canteen!

A: That doesn't sound a very good idea.

B: I'm thinking about <sup>taking</sup> to take a picnic with me!

### Gerúndio após preposições

■ Após uma preposição (about, against, at, in, of, on etc.), o verbo vem sempre na forma com -ing. Muitas vezes, a preposição forma unidade com um adjetivo, um substantivo ou um verbo.

■ Adjetivo + preposição + ...ing

She's good/bad at persuading people. *Ela é boa / ruim em persuadir pessoas.*

I was afraid/frightened of making a mistake. *Eu estava com medo de cometer um erro.*

I'm tired of / I'm fed up with visiting museums. *Eu estou cansado de visitar museus.*

I'm interested in meeting him. *Eu gostaria de / estou interessado em conhecê-lo.*

■ Substantivo + preposição + ...ing

What is the advantage of paying now? *O que ganhamos pagando agora?*

What are the chances of finding a taxi? *Quais as chances de achar um táxi?*

I hate the idea/thought of paying so much. *Detesto a idéia de pagar tanto.*

There are good reasons for eating a lot of fruit. *Existem boas razões para comer muita fruta.*

■ Verbo + preposição + ...ing

He talked/spoke/dreamed about emigrating. *Ele falou sobre / sonhou com a emigração.*

I thought about/of asking Tim for help. *Eu pensei em pedir ajuda ao Tim.*

I decided against / I am against moving. *Eu me decidi contra / Sou contra uma mudança.*

He apologized for being late. *Ele pediu desculpas por ter chegado tarde.*

She thanked us for helping her. *Ela nos agradeceu a ajuda.*

We succeeded in persuading her. *Conseguimos convencê-la.*

She insisted on paying for everybody. *Ela insistiu em pagar por todo o mundo.*

! -ing (e não o infinitivo) é usado também após look forward to, be used to e object to.

I'm looking forward to meeting (meet) him again. *Eu aguardo ansiosamente o reencontro com ele.*

In Norway we are used to having (have) a lot of snow. *Na Noruega, estamos acostumados a ter muita neve.*

They objected to sitting (sit) in the smoking section. *Eles se opuseram a ficar sentados na área para fumantes.*

-ing também é usado após How/What about?, be worth e feel like.

How/What about going to the cinema this evening? *Que tal irmos ao cinema?*

It's (not) worth waiting. *(Não) vale a pena esperar.*

I feel like going for a walk. *Estou com vontade de dar um passeio.*

■ before, after, by, instead of e without vêm sempre com -ing.

Before opening the letter, she took a deep breath. *Antes de ter aberto a carta, ela respirou fundo.*

You can save 10% by booking on the Internet. *Você pode economizar 10% reservando pela Internet.*

Instead of waiting, I went to another shop. *Em vez de esperar, fui para outra loja.*

She left without saying goodbye. *Ela foi embora sem se despedir.*

### Resumo

■ Após preposição, vem -ing, e não o infinitivo!



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I'm not interested for learning another language.  
 b I'm not interested in learning another language. ✓
- 1 a Are you good in making decisions?  
 b Are you good at making decisions?
- 2 a Ed got the job without having an interview.  
 b Ed got the job without to have an interview.
- 3 a We're looking forward to go on holiday.  
 b We're looking forward to going on holiday.
- 4 a We're thinking about to look for a new flat.  
 b We're thinking about looking for a new flat.
- 5 a What's the advantage from booking a return ticket?  
 b What's the advantage of booking a return ticket?
- 6 a It's not worth to book early.  
 b It's not worth booking early.

**B Rewrite these sentences with the gerund and the correct preposition.**

I'm fed up with learning vocabulary.  
 I'm tired of learning vocabulary.

- 1 Sandra doesn't mind working on Saturdays.  
 Sandra is used .....
- 2 I'd like to meet your new boss.  
 I'm interested .....
- 3 We're not going to buy a new kitchen.  
 We've decided .....
- 4 We managed to find a parking space.  
 We succeeded .....
- 5 I didn't want John to help me, but he did.  
 John insisted .....
- 6 I don't want to leave so early.  
 I object .....

**C Complete the dialogues with the gerund (+ correct preposition) or the infinitive.**

A: The thought of moving (move) is terrible.  
 B: I know. I don't want to go (go) either.

- 1 A: The chances ..... (get) a last-minute holiday are not very good.  
 B: Well, we can't afford ..... (pay) the full price.
- 2 A: You're really good ..... (remember) names. What's the name of that new restaurant we went to last month? I'm thinking ..... (book) a table for Saturday. Would you like ..... (come) with us?  
 B: No, thanks. I don't feel like ..... (go) out at the weekend.
- 3 A: My goodness, I'm exhausted! I'm not used ..... (jog) so far. I'm looking forward ..... (have) a shower and a rest.  
 B: You wanted ..... (run) round the lake! I suggested ..... (take) a shorter route but you insisted ..... (come) this way!
- 4 A: What about ..... (buy) Jane a picture for her birthday?  
 B: I'd prefer ..... (get) her some clothes. I'm thinking ..... (buy) her a pullover.

**D Translate the following sentences using the gerund and, where necessary, the correct preposition.**

- 1 Compramos um barco em vez de viajar nas férias.  
 2 O Paul é contra a compra de um novo carro.  
 3 A Sue é boa em explicar gramática.  
 4 Estou com medo de ir ao dentista.  
 5 Estamos aguardando ansiosamente o encontro com vocês na semana que vem.



- A: What are you doing with that big saucepan?  
 B: I promised <sup>to lend</sup> ~~lending~~ it to Don. He's cooking for 30 people for a party.  
 A: Hasn't he got his own saucepans?  
 B: Yes, but not a big one. It would mean <sup>buying</sup> ~~to buy~~ one just for this party.  
 A: Well, I need it. I'm cooking for Tina's kindergarten on Monday.  
 B: Don's party is on Saturday, so he can give it back on Sunday. I'll remember <sup>to tell</sup> ~~telling~~ him.

## Verbo + infinitivo

- Muitos verbos são seguidos por **to + infinitivo**.

I want to go now. *Quero ir agora.*

We can't afford to go on holiday. *Não temos recursos para viajar nas férias.*

afford *ter recursos*

expect *contar com*

offer *oferecer*

seem *parecer*

agree *concordar*

hope *esperar*

plan *planejar*

try *tentar*

decide *decidir*

learn *aprender*

promise *prometer*

want *querer*

manage *conseguir*

refuse *recusar-se*

## Verbo + infinitivo ou gerúndio

- Alguns verbos vêm seguidos de infinitivo ou gerúndio, sem diferença de significado.

I started/began to yawn / yawning. *Comecei a bocejar.*

I like/love to lie / lying in bed. *Gosto de/adoro ficar na cama.*

We hate to get / getting up early. *Detestamos levantar cedo.*

We prefer to drink / drinking tea. *Preferimos tomar chá.*

- No caso de alguns verbos, há uma diferença de significado.

I must remember to phone Ann. *Preciso me lembrar de ligar para a Ann.*

I remember meeting Ann in London in 1999. *Eu me lembro do encontro com a Ann em Londres em 1999.*

I mustn't forget to phone New York. *Eu não posso me esquecer de ligar para Nova York.*

I'll never forget arriving in New York. *Nunca vou esquecer minha chegada a Nova York.*

I stopped to light a cigarette. *Parei para acender um cigarro.*

I stopped smoking last year. *Parei de fumar no ano passado.*

I meant to tell you. *Pretendia contar-lhe.*

If we miss that train, it will mean having to wait an hour. *Se perdermos esse trem, isso significará que teremos de esperar uma hora.*

## Resumo

- Quando é possível usar o infinitivo ou o gerúndio após o verbo,

→ não há diferença de significado se o verbo é **begin, start, like, love, hate prefer**;

→ há diferença de significado se o verbo é **remember, forget, stop mean**.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a Did you remember to go to the bank? ✓  
 b Did you remember going to the bank?
- 1 a My colleague refused helping me yesterday.  
 b My colleague refused to help me yesterday.
- 2 a We've agreed meeting at 8 o'clock.  
 b We've agreed to meet at 8 o'clock.
- 3 a A 6 o'clock flight means getting up at 3 o'clock.  
 b A 6 o'clock flight means to get up at 3 o'clock.
- 4 a I forgot buying some coffee – I'll get some tomorrow.  
 b I forgot to buy some coffee – I'll get some tomorrow.
- 5 a I can remember to feel very upset when my aunt died.  
 b I can remember feeling very upset when my aunt died.
- 6 a We got lost so we stopped asking someone the way.  
 b We got lost so we stopped to ask someone the way.

**B Rewrite the following sentences.**

I must phone Carol this evening. I must remember to phone Carol this evening.

- 1 Sue wanted to go to the bank but she forgot.  
 Sue meant .....
- 2 Once I went to Alaska. I'll never forget it.  
 I'll never forget .....
- 3 Have you given up smoking?  
 Have you stopped .....
- 4 We met Sue and had coffee together.  
 We met Sue and stopped .....
- 5 I'm sure I left my wallet in the living room.  
 I can remember .....
- 6 I was very ill when I was ten. It was terrible.  
 I'll never forget .....

**C Complete the following dialogues with the gerund or the infinitive.**

A: Do you expect to win (win) your match tomorrow?

B: Not really. I can only remember winning (win) once against Jan because he was injured!

- 1 A: My son is learning ..... (drive). He hopes ..... (take) his test next month.  
 B: I'll never forget ..... (take) my driving test. I was so nervous but I managed ..... (pass) without any problems.
- 2 A: Where are my keys? I can remember ..... (leave) them in the kitchen but they're not there now.  
 B: The last time you lost them, I suggested ..... (leave) them by the front door.
- 3 A: I meant ..... (tell) you about my neighbours last time I saw you. They wrote to the landlord and told him they couldn't afford ..... (pay) so much rent and he agreed ..... (reduce) it!  
 B: I'd never think of ..... (do) that, but it's worth ..... (try).
- 4 A: Are you enjoying ..... (have) more time for yourself now you've stopped ..... (work) in London?  
 B: Yes, working here means ..... (not have to) spend hours on commuter trains.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Eu tenho de me lembrar de ir ao banco.  
 2 Paramos de procurar um novo apartamento. Não temos recursos para a mudança.  
 3 Detesto ter de trabalhar no fim de semana.  
 4 Onde está meu dicionário? Lembro-me de tê-lo emprestado (to lend) ao Tom.





- A: What's the matter? Problems with your computer?  
 B: Yes, I asked Ann <sup>to help</sup> ~~help~~ me. But she's got no time.  
 A: What's the problem exactly? Can I help?  
 B: Well, she knows all about computers. I wanted <sup>her to install</sup> ~~that she installs~~ this new software for me.  
 A: Is that all? I can do that for you. It's easy.  
 B: Oh thanks. If you have time, I'd like <sup>you to check</sup> ~~that you check~~ the printer for me, too.

## Verbo + objeto + infinitivo

### ■ Alguns verbos pedem objeto + infinitivo.

I asked David to help me. *Pedi ao Daniel que me ajudasse.*

She told me to clean my shoes. *Ele me mandou limpar meus sapatos.*

allow permitir

force forçar

order ordenar

tell mandar

advise aconselhar

help ajudar

persuade convencer

warn advertir

ask pedir

invite convidar

remind lembrar



warn é usado com not para indicar que alguém não deve fazer algo.

We warned her not to go out alone at night. *Nós a alertamos para não sair sozinha à noite.*

### ■ Após let (permitir) e make (fazer alguém fazer algo) vem o infinitivo sem to.

My boss lets me work at home. *Meu chefe me deixa trabalhar em casa.*

What made her shout like that? *O que a fez gritar tanto?*

The teacher made him write everything again. *O professor o fez escrever tudo de novo.*

## Em inglês: verbo + objeto + infinitivo = em português: verbo + oração subordinada



Em alguns casos, o objeto + infinitivo em inglês corresponde a uma oração subordinada em português.

I want him to go now (~~want that he goes now~~). *Quero que ele vá agora.*

I expect you to be on time (~~expect that...~~). *Espero que você seja pontual.*

I would like you to stay for dinner (~~would like that...~~). *Eu gostaria que você ficasse para o jantar.*

I would hate my son to find out from somebody else (~~would hate that...~~). *Eu detestaria que meu filho ficasse sabendo por outra pessoa.*

We are waiting for the rain to stop (~~waiting that...~~). *Nós estamos aguardando que a chuva pare.*

Com esses verbos, não é possível oração subordinada com that.



## Resumo

■ Usa-se infinitivo sem to após let e make.

■ Não se pode usar oração com that após want, would, like, hate e wait for.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I want go skiing this winter.  
b I want to go skiing this winter. ✓

- 1 a Sue asked the assistant show her some coats.  
b Sue asked the assistant to show her some coats.  
2 a Sally's parents didn't let her go to the disco.  
b Sally's parents didn't let her to go to the disco.  
3 a Would you like that I help you?  
b Would you like me to help you?  
4 a She wanted the children to write an essay.  
b She wanted that the children wrote an essay.  
5 a I'm waiting for the rush hour to finish before I go.  
b I'm waiting that the rush hour finishes before I go.  
6 a The man warned his son to play with matches.  
b The man warned his son not to play with matches.

**B Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets and an infinitive.**

My father said I had to stay at home last night. (make/stay)

*My father made me stay at home last night.*

- 1 Dave has invited me to his party. (would like/come)  
.....  
2 I need everyone here by nine o'clock. (expect/be)  
.....  
3 I told the children that they shouldn't play on the road. (warn/play)  
.....  
4 Sue spoke nicely to Jim and he agreed to go to the theatre. (persuade/go)  
.....  
5 My mother said I could borrow her car. (let/borrow)  
.....  
6 Jane's mother isn't happy with her plan to hitchhike round Europe. (not want/hitchhike)  
.....

**C Complete the following questions.**

A: Do you want ~~me to help you~~ or can you manage alone?

B: It's OK. I don't think I need any help, thanks.

- 1 A: Would you like ..... for you next Saturday?  
B: Yes, please. The girl who normally babysits for us is away.  
2 A: Can you afford to buy that jacket or do you want .....  
you some money?  
B: Well, could you lend me €100 till next week?  
3 A: Didn't you warn Jack ..... in front of the  
neighbours' house?  
B: Yes, but he thinks it's OK to park there.  
4 A: Can you remind ..... Ann this evening, please?  
B: Sure. Why do you need to phone her?  
5 A: Why did the teacher make ..... your homework  
again?  
B: She realized I had copied Sarah's because I had the same mistakes!

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Estou aguardando alguém que conserte o aquecimento.  
2 No ano passado eu deixei minha filha viajar com uma amiga durante as férias.  
3 Minha mulher quer que eu fique em casa e olhe as crianças.  
4 Nós alertamos você para não investir nessa empresa.  
5 Gostaríamos que nosso filho fizesse um curso de línguas nas férias de verão.





A: When you start your new job, the journey to work will be quite long, won't it? 60 kilometres?

B: Yes, but I'm <sup>travelling</sup> used to ~~travel~~ a long way.

A: How far do you travel now? 30?

B: 32. It <sup>take</sup> used to ~~take~~ me about 20 minutes, but now it's often nearly 40.

A: Because of the traffic?

B: Yes. Last week I <sup>took</sup> used to ~~take~~ the train for a few days. But that wasn't any better. It was so full.

### used to

- used to + infinitivo indica algo que se costumava fazer antigamente, mas que agora não é mais feito habitualmente.

I used to smoke, but I stopped two years ago. *Antigamente eu fumava...*

You used to cycle to work. Why have you stopped? *Antigamente você ia de bicicleta ao trabalho...*

We used to live in Scotland before Ann got her new job. *Antigamente morávamos na Escócia...*

- Pergunta e negação são formadas com did(n't) use to

Did you use to watch *Sesame Street* as a child? *Você costumava assistir...?*

I drink a lot of green tea. I didn't use to like tea. ... *Antigamente eu não gostava de chá.*

### be used to – get used to

- be used to indica um hábito existente; be used to something significa "estar acostumado a/com algo".

Here in Alaska we're used to cold weather. *Aqui no Alasca, estamos acostumados com o tempo frio.*

- get used to indica processo de transformar algo em hábito; "get used to something" significa "acostumar-se a/com algo".

I can't get used to this new uniform. *Não consigo me acostumar com o novo uniforme.*



be/get used to pede gerúndio, não infinitivo!

We're used to eating (~~eat~~) late. *Costumamos comer tarde.*

He never got used to living (~~live~~) abroad. *Ele nunca se acostumou com a vida no exterior.*

Compare:

I used to work at nights. *Antigamente eu trabalhava à noite. (Mas agora não mais.)*

I'm used to working at the weekend. *Estou acostumado com o trabalho / a trabalhar no fim de semana.*



### Resumo

- used to = hábito passado ("antigamente eu sempre... mas agora não mais")
- be used to = hábito existente ("eu estou acostumado/estava acostumado antigamente")
- get used to = processo de habituar-se ("eu me acostumo/acostumei")
- used to: pergunta/negação com did(n't) use to: Did you use to... / I didn't use to...
- be/get used to + ing



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a Where use you to live before you moved here?  
 b Where did you use to live before you moved here? ✓
- 1 a It used to taking me an hour to get to work until they built the new motorway.  
 b It used to take me an hour to get to work until they built the new motorway.
- 2 a I didn't use to like spinach – now it's one of my favourite vegetables.  
 b I use not to like spinach – now it's one of my favourite vegetables.
- 3 a Jane is used to living in the centre of town – the noise of the traffic doesn't worry her.  
 b Jane is used to live in the centre of town – the noise of the traffic doesn't worry her.
- 4 a When we were on holiday last month, we hired a car for a few days.  
 b When we were on holiday last month, we used to hire a car for a few days.

**B Complete these dialogues with *be used to* and the *-ing* form.**

- A: Is your daughter happy in her new flat?  
 B: She's surprised how much work it is! She / not / live alone. *She's not used to living alone.*
- 1 A: How do you feel about the conference now?  
 B: Very nervous. I / not / speak in front of so many people. ....
- 2 A: As a nurse, you must have to work at night. Isn't that hard?  
 B: No, it's OK. I / work at night. ....
- 3 A: Your son's penfriend is coming next week, isn't he?  
 B: Yes, I'll have to cook a proper meal every day. I / not / do that! ....
- 4 A: Don doesn't look very well. Do you think he's OK?  
 B: I think he's had too much wine. He / not / drink so much. ....
- 5 A: Didn't you have problems driving on the left in Cyprus?  
 B: I did, but my wife comes from England so she / drive on the left. ....

**C Complete these sentences by underlining the correct form.**

- If you move to England, you'll have to get used to driving / to drive on the left.
- 1 I didn't go to bed until 1 o'clock yesterday. I'm not used to going / to go to bed so late.
- 2 I thought you had always worked at this bank. I didn't realize you used to working / to work at a hospital.
- 3 My husband has to work shifts in his new job. He'll have to get used to sleeping / to sleep in the daytime.
- 4 When we first moved to Spain, we found it difficult to get used to eating / to eat so late in the evening.
- 5 When we were children, we used to living / to live in Somerset.

**D Translate the following sentences. If possible, use *used to*.**

- 1 Na semana passada eu reservei meu primeiro pacote de férias (*package holidays*).  
 2 Antigamente eu sempre dizia que nunca reservaria um pacote de férias.  
 3 Quando era mais jovem, eu não costumava reservar o hotel, somente o voo.  
 4 Eu costumava acampar (*to go camping*).  
 5 Uma vez eu fiquei numa pensão (*to stay in a guesthouse*), mas foi terrível.



- A: Was that Sonia in that car?  
 B: Yes, and the man <sup>who/that</sup> he was driving was Philip Barnes.  
 A: Philip Barnes?  
 B: Yes. He's the person <sup>who/that</sup> which wants to open that restaurant where the old hat shop was.  
 A: Oh yes. A new restaurant round here would be a good thing. But how does Sonia know him?  
 B: Well, I'll tell you something <sup>that</sup> what happened the other day...

## Orações adjetivas (relative clauses) com who, which, that, whose

- Nas frases seguintes, encontramos as orações adjetivas **who** smoke e **which** leak.

*People who smoke* live dangerously. *Pessoas que fumam* vivem perigosamente.

*Shoes which leak* are useless. *Sapatos que têm buraco* são inúteis.

As orações adjetivas definem melhor pessoas e coisas.

- Orações adjetivas que se referem a pessoas são introduzidas por **who** ou **that**.

Orações adjetivas que se referem a coisas são introduzidas por **which** ou **that**.

Is this *the man who/that* stole your bag? *É este o homem que roubou sua bolsa?*

I need *a car which/that* is reliable. *Eu preciso de um carro que seja confiável.*

Essas orações adjetivas são restritivas e, portanto, não são antecedidas de vírgula.

**that** vem também após **everything**, **nothing**, **something** e **anything**.

We threw away **everything that (what)** was left. *Jogamos fora tudo o que restou.*

- whose** corresponde a "cujo/a(s)".

He's the man **whose** wife had the car accident. ... *o homem cuja mulher sofreu o acidente de carro.*

They're the people **whose** son lives in Rome. ... *as pessoas cujo filho vive em Roma.*

## Orações adjetivas sem pronome relativo

- Nas orações seguintes, **he** e **who** são o sujeito da frase (aquele que escreve).

Tom is that journalist. **He** writes for the *Times*.

Tom is that journalist **who** writes for the *Times*. ... *o jornalista que escreve para o Times.*

- Nas frases seguintes, **we** é o sujeito do verbo **met**; **who** não é o sujeito, mas o objeto.

Tom is that journalist. **We** met **him**.

Tom is that journalist **who** **we** met. ... *o jornalista que nós ficamos conhecendo.*

- O pronome relativo que é objeto e não sujeito pode ser omitido.

Tom is that journalist (**who/that**) **we** met on holiday.

Was that the woman (**who/that**) **you** saw in my office?

*I'm going to wear the pullover (which/that) Jenny gave me.*

O pronome relativo não é sujeito, e sim objeto, quando um substantivo ou pronome fica entre **who/which/that** e o verbo.

## Resumo

- Pessoas: **who/that**; coisas: **which/that**
- who/which/that** podem ser omitidos quando outra palavra é o sujeito da oração adjetiva.
- Orações adjetivas restritivas não são precedidas de vírgula.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a The man he is working in the garden is our neighbour.  
 b The man who is working in the garden is our neighbour. ✓

- 1 a This is the book what Tom gave me.  
 b This is the book Tom gave me.  
 2 a There's the teacher who gives me piano lessons.  
 b There's the teacher which gives me piano lessons.  
 3 a That what I have to do in my new job is boring.  
 b What I have to do in my new job is boring.  
 4 a That's the person which bought the flat above ours.  
 b That's the person that bought the flat above ours.  
 5 a I need a new dress. I haven't got anything that fits.  
 b I need a new dress. I haven't got anything what fits.  
 6 a The man who's car was stolen is very angry.  
 b The man whose car was stolen is very angry.

**B Cross out the relative pronouns which are not necessary.**

The woman who gives me a lift to work is a neighbour.  
 The woman ~~who~~ you can see over there is my neighbour.

- 1 What happened to the paper which I bought yesterday?  
 2 Those are the people whose daughter sometimes babysits for us.  
 3 The pullover which you gave me for my birthday fits perfectly.  
 4 We've just had a letter from the people that we met on holiday.  
 5 The colleague who helped me move was involved in a car accident yesterday.  
 6 My boss has asked me to translate some brochures which he got in Spain.

**C Where necessary, add the missing relative pronouns.**

- 1 I've just seen the film ..... Sarah recommended.  
 2 What's the name of the teacher ..... husband works in Saudi Arabia?  
 3 ..... Tom said about Frank just can't be true.  
 4 The travel guide ..... I bought yesterday contains some good sightseeing tips.  
 5 What have you done with the keys ..... were lying on the kitchen table?  
 6 Nothing ..... happens to Paul surprises me.

**D Translate these sentences. If possible, leave out the relative pronouns.**

- 1 O homem que está entrando no banco é meu antigo chefe.  
 2 As pessoas que conhecemos na festa da Jane ligaram ontem à noite.  
 3 Hoje à noite vou encontrar uma amiga cujo marido é ator e aparece muitas vezes na televisão.  
 4 Posso realmente recomendar o filme que vimos no fim de semana.  
 5 O que precisamos fazer não é simples.



A: Have you met Angela Thomas?

B: She's the lady <sup>you came with</sup> ~~with who you came~~, isn't she?

A: That's right. She's my new boss.

B: I heard that your old boss was leaving, <sup>which</sup> ~~what~~ surprised me.

A: Yes. He's getting married and emigrating to Australia.

B: Really? You know the Bakers, <sup>who</sup> ~~that~~ have been our neighbours for the last 12 years. They're emigrating, too.

### Orações adjetivas com preposições

- Nas frases seguintes, o pronome relativo não é o sujeito da oração adjetiva e, portanto, pode ser omitido. Os sujeitos são **we** e **I**.

Ann is the musician. We talked **to her** at Jerry's party.

Ann is the musician **(who/that)** we talked **to** at Jerry's party.

A Ann é a música com quem conversamos na festa do Jerry.

Here's the camera. I took your picture **with it**.

Here's the camera **(which/that)** I took your picture **with**.

Aqui está a câmara fotográfica com a qual tirei sua foto.

A preposição (**with, to**) fica na oração adjetiva no mesmo lugar de antes – e **não** antes do pronome relativo, ao contrário do que acontece em português.

### Orações adjetivas explicativas com **who, which, whose**

- Sem a oração adjetiva, as seguintes frases seriam incompletas e até desconexas:

Smokers **who stop** live longer.

Cars **which have an electric engine** are cleaner.

- No entanto, as seguintes orações adjetivas podem ser omitidas. Contêm informações adicionais que não são necessárias para a compreensão da oração.

Tony's mother, **who by the way smokes like a chimney**, is a painter.

A mãe do Tony, a qual, aliás, fuma como uma chaminé, é pintora.

The Grand Hotel, **which is in fact very small**, was closed for repairs.

O Grand Hotel, que na realidade é muito pequeno, estava fechado para reparos.

- Orações adjetivas explicativas são introduzidas por **who** (pessoas) **which** (coisas), ou **whose**, mas **nunca** por **that**.

Emma, **who (that)** has two children, is my best friend.

Davenport's new book, **which (that)** has over 700 pages, is fantastic.

The Bensons, **whose** son now lives in Canada, are moving to a smaller house.

Orações adjetivas explicativas são isoladas por vírgulas (como em português).

**which** (e **não what**) introduzem orações adjetivas explicativas que retomam uma oração inteira. Tom didn't phone, **which (what)** I found strange. Tom não telefonou, o que eu achei estranho.

### Resumo

- Orações adjetivas com preposição:

→ **who/which/that** podem ser omitidos;

→ a preposição fica após o verbo (**não** antes do pronome relativo).

- Orações adjetivas explicativas (isoladas por vírgulas):

→ **who** ou **which** (**that não pode** ser usado);

→ **which** (e **não what**) retoma uma oração inteira.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a What's the name of the person to who you spoke at the travel agent's?  
 b What's the name of the person you spoke to at the travel agent's? ✓
- 1 a Next year I'm going to visit Lynn, that lives in Boston.  
 b Next year I'm going to visit Lynn, who lives in Boston.
- 2 a The photo at that Ann is looking was taken in Rome.  
 b The photo Ann is looking at was taken in Rome.
- 3 a My oldest brother who lives in Sydney has decided to get married.  
 b My oldest brother, who lives in Sydney, has decided to get married.
- 4 a Tom told a lot of jokes at the dinner party, which got on my nerves.  
 b Tom told a lot of jokes at the dinner party, what got on my nerves.

**B Cross out the relative pronouns which are not necessary.**

Where's the dictionary **which** you were looking at earlier?  
 How much was the dictionary **which** was on special offer?

- 1 That's the man who I bought my car from.  
 2 That's the man who sold me my car.  
 3 What's the name of the girl who is sharing a flat with Jane?  
 4 Jane's flatmate is the girl who my brother was going out with last year.  
 5 My first flat, which didn't even have a bathroom, was in the basement of an old house.  
 6 The landlord of my first flat, who owned all the flats in the building, was really mean.

**C Write questions with a relative clause.**

You were looking for a book the other day. Is this the one?  
 Is this the book **you were looking for**?

- 1 I saw you talking to a woman at the bus stop. Who was it?  
 What's the name of the woman .....
- 2 You wrote to ten hotels, didn't you? Have you had any replies?  
 Have you heard from any of the hotels .....
- 3 Tom grew up in an old farmhouse. Is it still there?  
 What has happened to the old farmhouse .....
- 4 Karin applied for a job last month. Did she get it?  
 Did Karin get the job .....
- 5 How about going out for dinner? Jack told us about a good restaurant last week.  
 How about going to the restaurant .....

**D Translate the following sentences. Be careful with the commas!**

- 1 A sra. Fox, que sempre rega (to water) nossas plantas quando viajamos, está se mudando.  
 2 A amiga pela qual esperei ontem sofreu um acidente.  
 3 O David (ainda) não nos escreveu um cartão-postal, o que é muito incomum.  
 4 Meu chefe, que é (to come) do Brasil, casou-se ontem.  
 5 Como se chama o hotel no qual ficamos no ano passado?



- A: What time will you be back?  
 B: About 12. I'll phone <sup>if</sup> when I'm late.  
 A: OK. Say hello to James for me if you see him.  
 B: OK. I'll give him a kiss from you if he <sup>is</sup> will be there. OK?  
 A: Well, I'd rather give him a kiss myself.  
 B: <sup>I'll tell</sup> I tell him that if I see him.

### Uso de if e when

- if e when podem ser usados um no lugar do outro quando significam "sempre que" / "toda vez que"  
 When/If you heat ice, it turns to water. Quando / Se você esquentar gelo, ele vira água.

- "se" significando "caso" é traduzido por if:

If (When) it rains today, I'll stay at home. Se chover hoje, ficarei em casa.

Compare:

If I see Jim, I'll show him this letter. Se eu vir/Caso eu veja o Jim, lhe mostrarei a carta.

When I see Jim, I'll show him this letter. Wenn/Quando eu vir o Jim, lhe mostrarei a carta.

### Orações condicionais do tipo I (conditional I)

- Orações condicionais indicam que algo está na dependência de certas circunstâncias. Estas frases apresentam duas partes:

oração com if: menciona a condição

oração principal: menciona a consequência

If I have time after work,

I'll go shopping this evening.

Se eu tiver tempo após o trabalho,

farei compras à noite.

A oração com if pode seguir a oração principal. Nesse caso, não pode haver vírgula entre as duas orações.  
 Tom will phone if he needs our help. O Tom vai ligar se ele precisar de nossa ajuda.

- A sequência temporal é fixa nas condicionais:

oração com if: presente

oração principal: will

If Ann finds anything out,

she'll tell (she tells) us tomorrow.

Se a Ann descobrir alguma coisa, nos informará amanhã.

If the weather is bad,

we'll probably come home early.

Se o tempo estiver ruim,

chegaremos provavelmente mais cedo em casa.

Na oração com if, não há will: If I am (will be) late, I'll phone.

- Na oração principal, podem também ocorrer o imperativo ou um modal verb (can, might, must etc.).

If you hear the postman, tell me. Se você escutar o carteiro, diga-me.

If it stops raining, we can play tennis. Se parar de chover, poderemos jogar tênis.

Na oração com if, pode também ocorrer um modal verb: If you can't come, please phone.

- As duas orações (a oração com if e a oração principal) estão no presente quando if significa "sempre que" / "toda vez que" (compare com o exemplo acima: If you heat ice, it turns to water).

### Resumo

- "quando" com significado temporal = when
- "se" com significado de "caso" = if
- Oração com if: presente; oração principal: will
- Não se usa will na oração com if!



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I'll phone you if I'm late. ✓  
 b I'll phone you when I'm late.
- 1 a If you will see Tom, will you give him my new address?  
 b If you see Tom, will you give him my new address?
- 2 a If the weather is bad, we won't be able to have a barbecue.  
 b When the weather is bad, we won't be able to have a barbecue.
- 3 a Jane is very upset if you won't invite her to your party.  
 b Jane will be very upset if you don't invite her to your party.
- 4 a I won't be disappointed if you don't manage to come next weekend.  
 b I'm not disappointed if you won't manage to come next weekend.

**B Make complete sentences with if.**

If I / have to work late this evening, I / phone you.

If I have to work late this evening, I'll phone you.

- 1 If the taxi / not come soon, we / miss our train. ....
- 2 I'm sure you / feel better if you / lie down. ....
- 3 What / you / do if your boss / not let you take time off? .....
- 4 If I / not get to the bank today, I / change some money at the airport. ....
- 5 If you / get Sarah's birthday present, I / get the flowers for her. ....
- 6 I / give you a lift tomorrow if your car / still be at the garage. ....

**C Complete these dialogues.**

A: How are we getting to the station?

B: By taxi. If we ~~take~~ (take) the bus, we'll ~~be~~ (be) late.

- 1 A: How are you going to get to Bill's party?  
 B: Well, if I ..... (drive), I ..... (not be able to) drink.
- 2 A: Are you going to post Carol's birthday card today?  
 B: No. It ..... (still get) there on time if I ..... (post) it tomorrow.
- 3 A: Is Sam's new girlfriend coming to your dinner party?  
 B: Yes. If I ..... (not invite) her, he ..... (not come).
- 4 A: Are you going to buy your children a pet?  
 B: I don't know. If I ..... (buy) them one, I ..... (probably have to) look after it.
- 5 A: The windows are very dirty.  
 B: Yes, but if I ..... (clean) them, it ..... (probably rain).

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Se ele não vier logo, começaremos sem ele.  
 2 O que você fará se chover no fim de semana?  
 3 Você irá cedo para casa amanhã se o seu chefe permitir?  
 4 Eu não vou comprar o casaco se ele não for encurtado (*reduced*).  
 5 Se o Tom não ganhar o jogo amanhã, ficará muito desapontado.



- A: What are your plans for today? What would you like to do?
- B: Well, we could go and see that new film at the cinema if I <sup>didn't</sup> have to go shopping.
- A: We can go to the cinema later. How much shopping have you got? Can I help?
- B: If I were you, I <sup>wouldn't</sup> ask that.
- A: Why?
- B: I have to buy presents, and I hate it. Christmas <sup>would be</sup> great if people didn't give presents.

## "O que aconteceria se..."

- As seguintes orações com **if** do tipo I descrevem uma situação que é possível.  
If it snows after Christmas, I'll go skiing. *Se nevar após o Natal...*  
If I have enough money, I'll go to the USA next summer. *Se eu tiver dinheiro suficiente...*  
O falante acha possível, talvez até provável, que neve após o Natal, ou que ele terá dinheiro suficiente.
- Já as seguintes orações com **if** descrevem uma situação que é improvável ou até impossível.  
If snowed in the Sahara, you could go skiing there. *Se nevasse no Saara, seria possível esquiar lá.*  
If I was/were rich, I'd have one house here and another in the USA. *Se eu fosse rico, teria uma casa aqui e outra nos EUA.*  
O falante acha improvável ou até impossível que neve no Saara ou que ele fique rico. Ele apenas imagina o que aconteceria nesses casos. Essa oração condicional é a do tipo II.

## Orações condicionais do tipo II (conditional II)

- Nesse tipo de oração condicional, a sequência temporal é fixa:  

oração com <b>if</b> : simple past	oração principal: <b>would/could/might</b> + infinitivo
If I <b>knew</b> the answer,	I'd (= I <b>would</b> ) tell you.
Se eu <b>soubesse</b> a resposta,	eu <b>a contaria</b> para você.
If it <b>cost</b> less,	I <b>would buy</b> it straightaway.
Se <b>isso custasse</b> menos,	eu <b>a compraria</b> imediatamente.
If we <b>lived</b> in Australia,	we <b>could spend</b> Christmas on the beach.
Se <b>morássemos</b> na Austrália,	<b>poderíamos</b> passar o Natal na praia.
If we <b>asked</b> Tony,	he <b>might have</b> an idea.
Se <b>perguntássemos</b> ao Tony,	<b>talvez ele tivesse</b> uma idéia.

Embora a oração com **if** esteja no passado, ela se refere ao presente ou ao futuro.

Na oração com **if**, **não** ocorre **would**: If I **won** (~~would win~~) a million dollars, I'd travel round the world.

- If I were you significa "no teu lugar" / "se eu fosse você".  
If I were you, I'd book early. *No teu lugar / Se eu fosse você, eu faria a reserva cedo.*  
I wouldn't wait if I were you. *No teu lugar / Se eu fosse você, eu não esperaria.*

## Resumo

- Na oração com **if**: simple past; na oração principal: **would/could/might** + infinitivo
- Não se usa **would** na oração com **if**



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I would help you if I had more time. ✓
  - b I would help you if I would have more time.
- 1 a What did you do if you would lose your job?  
b What would you do if you lost your job?
  - 2 a If we would invite Paul to our wedding, he wouldn't come.  
b If we invited Paul to our wedding, he wouldn't come.
  - 3 a If I were you, I wouldn't buy that sofa.  
b If I were you, I didn't buy that sofa.
  - 4 a When I had more money, I would work part-time.  
b If I had more money, I would work part-time.

**B Make complete sentences with if.**

The grass is really wet. If I / be you, I / not cut it today.  
If I were you, I wouldn't cut it today.

- 1 Why do you work so hard? If you / work less, you / have more time for your family.
- 2 I don't understand why Sue spends so much money on clothes. If she / not buy so many, she / be able to afford more holidays.
- 3 Have you seen this job ad? It sounds really interesting. If I / be you, I / apply for it.
- 4 Jim's often late for work. If he / be more punctual, he / probably get on better with his boss.
- 5 Why are they going to Spain in February? If they / wait a couple of months, it / not be so cold.

**C Make complete sentences. Use conditional I or II.**

If I / feel better at the weekend, I / go for a walk.

If I feel better at the weekend, I'll go for a walk.

If I / win on the lottery, I / travel round the world.

If I won on the lottery, I would travel round the world.

- 1 I'm sure it will never happen, but if I / lose my passport, I / go to the police.
- 2 You love ballet, don't you? If you / want to come with us on Saturday, I / try to get another ticket.
- 3 If I / be you, I / save some money every month.
- 4 If I / not have time to call you this evening, I / phone you tomorrow – I promise.
- 5 We always have to find someone to look after our dog when we're away. If we / not have one, I'm sure we / go on holiday more often.
- 6 Don't book a taxi. I / give you a lift to the airport tomorrow if your husband can't take you.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Se eu fosse você, não iria na sexta-feira.
- 2 Eu ajudaria você se eu ficasse aqui no fim de semana.
- 3 Se eu não tivesse que fazer baldeação (to change) duas vezes, eu iria de ônibus para o trabalho.
- 4 Minha irmã trabalharia apenas por meio-período se ela não precisasse do dinheiro.
- 5 Se os meus pais não morassem tão longe, eu os visitaria mais freqüentemente.





- A: Oh damn, no coffee! I used the last of it last night.  
 B: I've just been shopping. If you ~~would have told~~ <sup>had told</sup> me, I could have bought some.  
 A: Sorry. My memory is getting really bad.  
 B: You ~~could do~~ <sup>could have done</sup> something about it last year if you ~~went~~ <sup>had gone</sup> on that memory training course with me.  
 A: What course was that?  
 B: See? You've forgotten. You ~~had missed~~ <sup>would have missed</sup> Dave's party last Saturday if I hadn't reminded you.

## "O que teria acontecido se..."

- As seguintes orações com **if** descrevem uma situação no passado que não aconteceu da maneira descrita.

If I had gone to Spain for my holiday, I would have had good weather.

*Se eu tivesse ido para a Espanha nas férias, eu teria tido tempo bom.*

Realidade: Eu não fui à Espanha.

If we had had enough money, we would have bought the car.

*Se nós tivéssemos tido dinheiro suficiente, nós teríamos comprado o carro.*

Realidade: Nós não tínhamos dinheiro suficiente.

A situação descrita nunca foi e nunca será real, já que ela pertence ao passado concluído. O falante apenas imagina o que poderia ter sido. É a oração condicional do tipo III.

## Orações condicionais do tipo III (conditional III)

- A sequência temporal também é fixa nas orações condicionais do tipo III:

oração com **if**: past perfect

If I had seen Ann,

*Se eu tivesse visto a Ann,*

If I had driven more slowly,

*Se eu tivesse dirigido mais devagar,*

If we had asked Tony,

*Se tivéssemos perguntado ao Tony,*

oração principal: **would/could/might + have + particípio**

I would have asked her for the address.

*eu teria lhe pedido o seu endereço.*

I could have avoided the accident.

*poderia ter evitado o acidente.*

he might have helped us.

*ele poderia ter nos ajudado.*

- Freqüentemente, usam-se formas negativas.

I wouldn't have dropped the plate if it hadn't been so hot.

*Eu não teria deixado cair o prato se ele não estivesse tão quente.*

If I had seen the colours in daylight, I wouldn't have bought this sofa.

*Se eu tivesse visto as cores à luz do dia, não teria comprado este sofá.*



## Resumo

- Na oração com **if**: past perfect; na oração principal: **would/could/might + have + particípio**



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a If we would have bought our car last year, it had been cheaper.
- b If we had bought our car last year, it would have been cheaper. ✓
- 1 a If I'd taken my camera on holiday, I could have taken some photos.
- b If I would have taken my camera on holiday, I could have taken some photos.
- 2 a I wouldn't have been late for work if I didn't forget to set my alarm clock.
- b I wouldn't have been late for work if I hadn't forgotten to set my alarm clock.
- 3 a Were you able to buy your flat if your uncle hadn't left you some money?
- b Would you have been able to buy your flat if your uncle hadn't left you some money?
- 4 a If there hadn't been so many interruptions, I might have finished this work yesterday.
- b If there weren't so many interruptions, I would finish this work yesterday.

**B Make complete sentences with If.**

Dave lost his wallet on holiday. If someone / not find it in the street, he / not get it back.

*If someone hadn't found it in the street, he wouldn't have got it back.*

- 1 We went to Spain last week. If we / not manage to get a last-minute holiday, we / not be able to go away.  
.....
- 2 I don't know why you didn't apply for that job last month. I'm sure you / get it if you / apply.  
.....
- 3 The management didn't increase their offer. The workers / not go on strike if the management / agree to pay them more.  
.....
- 4 Gary failed his final exams. If he / study harder, he / might pass.  
.....
- 5 Jane had no idea about the company's financial problems when she accepted a job there. She / take the job if she / know?  
.....

**C Write sentences with If.**

Paul went on a training course last year and met Jane.

*If Paul hadn't gone on the training course, he wouldn't have met Jane.*

- 1 I didn't listen to the radio in the morning so I didn't know about the hold-up on the motorway.  
.....
- 2 Sarah didn't apply for a visa early enough and so she had to cancel her trip to Australia.  
.....
- 3 We didn't have our mobile phone with us, so we couldn't phone to say we'd be late.  
.....
- 4 I took a risk and invested all my money in some shares. A year later I made a lot of money on them.  
.....
- 5 The children didn't know that the ice on the lake was too thin and they went skating.  
.....

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Se eu não tivesse levado (to have) tanta bagagem, eu teria vindo de ônibus, não de táxi.
- 2 Se nós tivéssemos sabido como a exposição (exhibition) é cheia nos fins de semana, teríamos esperado até segunda-feira.
- 3 Se você não tivesse me ligado, eu teria dormido além da conta (to oversleep).
- 4 O acidente não teria acontecido se Pete não tivesse bebido tanto.
- 5 Você teria se mudado se tivesse sabido como esta rua é barulhenta?



A: Have you heard this crazy story about Dave?

B: Yes. Jim told me. He <sup>said that / told me that</sup> Dave ate a fish and found a gold ring in it.

A: Do you believe it? Which restaurant was this? Who else was there?

B: Well, Jim <sup>told</sup> me that Ann was there.

A: What does she say? Has anyone spoken to her?

B: I haven't, and when I saw Jim yesterday afternoon, he said that he <sup>hadn't</sup> spoken to her either.

### Discurso direto (direct speech) versus discurso indireto (indirect speech)

- O que alguém diz pode ser citado diretamente ou relatado indiretamente.

Discurso direto: Ann said, "Tom is an idiot." A Ann disse: "O Tom é um idiota".

Discurso indireto: Ann said that Tom was an idiot. A Ann disse que o Tom é um idiota.

Pensamentos também podem ser relatados.

Pensamento: "Sally will be late." → Relato: I thought/knew that Sally would be late.

Say ou tell introduzem na maioria das vezes o discurso indireto. O verbo tell vem antes da pessoa a quem se diz algo. Quando essa pessoa não é mencionada, usa-se o verbo say.

He told me (told) that he knows London well. Ele me disse que conhece bem Londres.

He said (said-me) that he knows London well.

That muitas vezes é omitido.

Tony said that (said, that) he will be here at six. Ann said she (said, she) loves fish.

### Transposição temporal no discurso indireto

- Caso o verbo introdutório do discurso indireto esteja no passado (p.ex., said), o verbo da frase relatada frequentemente é transposto para o passado.

presente	→ passado	"I feel ill."	→ She said (that) she felt ill.
		"I'm working."	→ She said (that) she was working.
present perfect	→ past perfect	"I've had a dream."	→ She said (that) she had had a dream.
can/may	→ could/might	"I can/may come."	→ She said (that) she could/might come.
will	→ would	"I'll be there."	→ She said (that) she would be there.

- Os verbos no passado (a não ser no present perfect) e os modal verbs could, might, should e would permanecem quase todos inalterados.

passado "We saw Tom there." → She said they saw (ou: had seen) Tom there.

"He was smoking." → She said he was (ou: had been) smoking.

past perfect "I had eaten." → She said she had eaten.

could/might/should "I could help." → She said she could help.

would "I wouldn't tell him." → She said she wouldn't tell him.

- Uma transposição temporal não ocorre necessariamente quando o relatado vale ainda ou sempre.

"When I see him, I'll ask him." → She said she'll ask him when she sees him. He'll be here soon.

A transposição temporal é escolhida pelo falante quando ele quer se distanciar do relatado e indicar que não garante a veracidade deste.

Político: "Inflation is low". → Relato no jornal: The government said that inflation was low.

### Resumo

- Transposição temporal com o verbo introdutório no passado: presente → passado, present perfect → past perfect, can → could, may → might, will → would



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a "I'm hungry." → Sue said me she was hungry.  
 b "I'm hungry." → Sue said she was hungry. ✓

- 1 a Tom told me he had seen Spielberg's latest film.  
 b Tom told he had seen Spielberg's latest film.  
 2 a Jane said me she had had a good holiday.  
 b Jane said she had had a good holiday.  
 3 a The teacher told us, that 32°F is 0°C.  
 b The teacher told us that 32°F is 0°C.  
 4 a Al told us an hour ago that Ann has phoned.  
 b Al told us an hour ago that Ann had phoned.  
 5 a "I'm meeting Jo." → Ed said he met Jo.  
 b "I'm meeting Jo." → Ed said he was meeting Jo.  
 6 a "I want to go." → She said she would go.  
 b "I want to go." → She said she wanted to go.

**B Put the following sentences into indirect speech.**

"I don't want to go to Spain again." → Sandra explained that *she didn't want to go to Spain again.*

- 1 "I can help at the weekend and Sue may have time too." → Paul's awful. Two weeks ago he promised he ..... and said Sue ..... and then neither of them came!  
 2 "We've bought a house in the country. We think it will be better for the children." → When I last saw Mrs Adams she told me they .....  
 3 "You'll have to work harder if you want to pass the exam." → The teacher told me I ..... In fact I passed without any problems!  
 4 "I've had two job interviews but I'm not really interested in either of the jobs." → Tom said he ..... So he's still looking.

**C Report the following things which you read in the newspaper and don't really believe.**

- 1 "Petrol will soon be much cheaper." → A government spokesperson promised that .....  
 2 "Temperatures in June were lower than in March." → The weather report claimed that .....  
 3 "Bill Gates has decided to give all his money to charity." → A report in last week's paper said that .....  
 4 "Prince Charles is getting married again." → The headline in yesterday's paper said that .....  
 5 "Scientists have found a cure for Aids." → An article in last Saturday's paper claimed that .....

**D Complete these sentences using the information in brackets.**

A: I'll be in Hamburg on Wednesday.

B: Last week you told me (Thursday) *you'd be in Hamburg on Thursday.*

- 1 A: I'm hungry. Let's go out for dinner.  
 B: Half an hour ago you said (not hungry / not want to go out for dinner) .....  
 2 A: I'm going to apply for this job.  
 B: When I told you about the job last week, you said (not interested in it) .....  
 3 A: I think I'll get red wine for the party.  
 B: Last week you said (white wine) .....  
 4 A: I can't come round this evening because my car is at the garage.  
 B: You've never got time! Yesterday you said you (can't come) ..... because you (have to work) .....



- A: Who was that I saw you with last Tuesday?  
 B: Cella Burns. She said she had seen you <sup>the day before</sup> yesterday.  
 A: You mean last Monday. Where?  
 B: In the Green Chopsticks. She asked who <sup>you were</sup> were you.  
 A: So what did you say? I think I'd like to meet her.  
 B: Well that's good, because I asked her if she <sup>wanted</sup> did want to meet you.

## Perguntas no discurso indireto

- Perguntas de "sim/não" são introduzidas através de ask + if/whether (= se). Os tempos do discurso direto são modificados como nas orações afirmativas (veja unit 36).

"Is it raining?" → He asked if/whether it was raining. Ele perguntou se estava chovendo.

"Can you swim?" → He asked if/whether I could swim. Ele perguntou se eu sabia nadar.

do/does/did não ocorre na pergunta indireta.

"Do you know Dave?" → He asked if/whether I knew Dave.

"Did Ann go to the party?" → He asked if/whether Ann went to the party.

- Perguntas wh- são introduzidas através de ask + pronome interrogativo.

"Where's Tom?" → He asked where Tom was.

"Who have you spoken to?" → He asked who I had spoken to.

- Outras expressões que podem introduzir perguntas indiretas: want to know / find out / wonder

"Who's talking?" → He wanted to know / wanted to find out / wondered who was talking.

## Pedidos e ordens no discurso indireto

- Relatam-se pedidos com ask somebody (not) to do something.

"I'd like some help, please." → He asked me to help him. Ele pediu que eu o ajudasse.

"Please don't smoke." → He asked me not to smoke. Ele pediu que eu não fumasse.

- Relatam-se ordens com tell somebody (not) to do something.

"Go home." → He told me to go home. Ele me mandou ir para casa.

"Don't wait." → He told me not to wait. Ele disse que eu não esperasse.

## Indicações de lugar e de tempo no discurso indireto

Quando algo é relatado num lugar diferente ou num tempo posterior, determinadas indicações de lugar e de tempo precisam ser modificadas.

"Tom's not here." → He said Tom wasn't there.

"I can't come today." → He said he couldn't come that day.

"I met Bill yesterday." → He said he had met Bill the day before.

"We're leaving tomorrow." → He said they were leaving the next day.

"It's my 30th birthday this week/month/year." → He said it was ... that week/month/year.

"Ed died last Sunday/week/month/year." → He said Ed had died the Sunday/week/... before.

"She's moving next Monday/week/month/year." → He said ... the following Monday/week/...

## Resumo

- Perguntas no discurso indireto: ask + if/whether, ask + pronome interrogativo
- Pedidos/ordens no discurso indireto: ask/tell somebody (not) to do something
- here → there; today → that day; yesterday → the day before; tomorrow → the next day;  
 this ... → that ... ; last ... → the ... before; next ... → the following ...



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a Tom asked me if I did know how old Sandra was.  
 b Tom asked me if I knew how old Sandra was. ✓

- 1 a The teacher asked the children where their homework was.  
 b The teacher asked the children where was their homework.  
 2 a "Is Sue coming?" → Jane asked me, if Sue was coming.  
 b "Is Sue coming?" → Jane asked me if Sue was coming.  
 3 a "We moved yesterday." → Ann wrote and told us they'd moved the day before.  
 b "We moved yesterday." → Ann wrote and told us they'd moved yesterday.  
 4 a "Can you come a bit earlier?" → Dave asked us to come a bit earlier.  
 b "Can you come a bit earlier?" → Dave said us to come a bit earlier.

**B Report the following requests and commands.**

"Please don't be late." (Paul/us) *Paul asked us not to be late.*  
 "Be quiet!" (teacher/children) *The teacher told the children to be quiet.*

- 1 "Drive more slowly!" (driving instructor / student) .....  
 2 "Stay in bed and don't smoke." (doctor/patient) .....  
 3 "Can you help me, please?" (old lady / man) .....  
 4 "Don't forget your passports." (guide/tourists) .....  
 5 "Could you finish the report?" (boss/secretary) .....

**C Report these sentences.**

Sue: "We are getting married next week."  
 Sue wrote and told us that *they were getting married the following week.*

- 1 Jane: "My husband is starting a new job today."  
 I spoke to Jane a week ago and she said .....  
 2 Ed: "We're meeting in the Red Lion next week."  
 Ed rang Tom and told him ..... but he didn't make it.  
 3 Carol: "Sue will be here soon – she's not normally late."  
 Carol said Sue ..... and then her husband rang to say  
 she'd had an accident.  
 4 Ann: "We moved yesterday. As soon as we have a new phone number, I'll let you know."  
 I saw Ann a month ago and she told me .....  
 .....

**D Report these questions.**

- 1 John: "Did you get a birthday card from Sue?"  
 John asked me .....  
 2 Jane: "Do you know what time the concert starts?"  
 Jane asked me ..... and then she was still late!  
 3 Mary: "Can you babysit for us next Saturday?"  
 Two weeks ago Mary asked me .....  
 I said 'yes' and then I forgot.  
 4 Tom: "Where are we meeting the others this evening?"  
 It's funny. On Saturday Tom asked me .....  
 and then he didn't come.  
 5 Dave: "Could I borrow your bike next weekend?"  
 Four weeks ago Dave asked me .....  
 and he still hasn't brought it back.



**Help yourself**

A: ~~Help you~~ to another drink.

B: Thanks, but I think it's time for me to go.

A: Oh, that's a pity. We must ~~meet us~~ <sup>meet</sup> again soon.

B: Yes, that would be nice. Have you been invited to the opening of Donald Webster's exhibition?

A: No, we don't know ~~us~~ <sup>each other</sup> very well.

B: He's very good. Would you like to go? You could come with me, if you like.

**Formas**

Singular:	-self	myself	yourself	himself, herself, itself
		<i>mim mesmo/a</i>	<i>si/você mesmo/a</i>	<i>si/ele/ela mesmo/a</i>
Plural:	-selves	ourselves	yourselves	themselves
		<i>nós mesmos/as</i>	<i>si/vocês mesmos/as</i>	<i>si/eles/elas mesmos/as</i>

**Pronome reflexivo para referir-se ao sujeito**

■ Nesse caso, não se usa o pronome oblíquo em inglês.

We saw ourselves (~~us~~) on a big screen. Nós nos vimos num grande monitor.

I taught myself (~~me~~) chess. Eu mesma me ensinei xadrez.

She can take care of herself. Ela pode tomar conta de si mesma.

There are the drinks. Help yourselves, and enjoy yourselves! ... Sirvam-se e divirtam-se!

Exceção: após preposições de lugar (in front of, behind, with etc.)

Tom heard a noise behind him (~~himself~~). ... atrás de si. He had a lot of money with him. ... consigo.

each other corresponde a "um ao outro", "mutuamente".

We write each other (~~us~~) e-mails. Nós nos escrevemos e-mails (um ao outro).

After 20 years of marriage they know each other (~~them~~) very well. ... eles se conhecem muito bem (mutuamente).

Verbs reflexivos em português nem sempre correspondem a verbos reflexivos em inglês.

We can't afford that. Não podemos nos dar a esse luxo.

When will he decide? Quando ele se decide?

afford dar-se ao luxo

feel sentir-se

remember lembrar-se

change trocar-se

lie down deitar-se

sit down sentar-se

complain queixar-se

meet encontrar-se

wonder perguntar-se

concentrate concentrar-se

relax distrair-se

worry preocupar-se

wash e dress/undress são reflexivos apenas quando a atividade requer um esforço.

Little Tim is only two. He can't dress himself yet. Ed's broken his arm. He can't wash himself.

**Pronome reflexivo para enfatizar algo = mesmo/a**

■ Pronomes reflexivos também são usados para enfatizar algo. Nesse caso, correspondem a "mesmo/a".

We designed the house ourselves. Nós mesmos projetamos a casa.

The teacher didn't know the answer to question 5 himself. O próprio professor não sabia a resposta...

**Resumo**

■ Singular: -self; plural: -selves

■ "um ao outro", "mutuamente" = each other

■ Certos verbos reflexivos importantes em português não são verbos reflexivos em inglês: sentir-se, concentrar-se, encontrar-se, preocupar-se...



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a Be careful with that knife or you'll cut yourself! ✓
  - b Be careful with that knife or you'll cut you!
- 1 a When are we meeting us?
  - b When are we meeting?
- 2 a Be quiet! I can't concentrate myself.
  - b Be quiet! I can't concentrate.
- 3 a I remember me meeting you at Sue's party.
  - b I remember meeting you at Sue's party.
- 4 a How long have we known each other now?
  - b How long have we known us now?
- 5 a I paid for myself.
  - b I paid for me.
- 6 a Help you to some more food.
  - b Help yourself to some more food.

**B Complete these sentences with the translation of the verbs in brackets.**

(cuidar-se) My grandmother can no longer look after herself.

- 1 (sentir-se) Sue ..... much better today.
- 2 (perguntar-se) I ..... if Tom will phone.
- 3 (divertir-se) We really ..... at the party last week.
- 4 (ferir-se) Gary fell off the ladder and .....
- 5 (concentrar-se) It was hot and the students couldn't .....

**If necessary, add the correct reflexive pronouns or each other.**

The students recorded their role play and then watched ~~themselves~~ on video.

The students always speak to ~~each other~~ in English in the class.

- 1 You shouldn't blame ..... for the accident. It was the other driver's fault.
- 2 What time are we meeting .....?
- 3 David is very selfish – he only thinks about .....
- 4 Sue and Dave are so different but they really seem to like .....
- 5 Relax ..... and make ..... at home.
- Help ..... if you would like something to drink.
- 6 I can't afford ..... to visit Jane but we haven't seen ..... for so long and she will only worry ..... if I don't go.

**Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Eu me pergunto quando chegaremos.
- 2 O Paul queixou-se ontem – ele não conseguiu se concentrar porque os vizinhos foram muito barulhentos.
- 3 Nós nos encontraremos às oito, mas não consigo me lembrar onde.
- 4 Eu tenho montes de fotos dos meus filhos, mas nenhuma de mim mesma.
- 5 No fim de semana, gosto de deitar e relaxar.



A: A great party, Isn't it?

B: Yes, Tom and Ann are so <sup>well</sup> ~~good~~ organized and Tom cooks so <sup>beautifully</sup> ~~beautiful~~.

A: Mm. Have you tried this pie here?

B: I can't see very <sup>well</sup> ~~good~~ without my glasses. Wait a moment. Oh, that's better. Yes, it looks <sup>good</sup> ~~well~~.

A: It tastes wonderful, too.

B: They've really worked <sup>hard</sup> ~~hardly~~, haven't they?

## Adjetivos

- Adjetivos descrevem como alguém/alguma coisa é. Ficam antes de um substantivo (1) ou após *be* (2).

1 Sue is a **careful** driver.  
... uma motorista cuidadosa.

2 Sue/She is **careful**.  
... é cuidadosa.

## Advérbios

- Advérbios descrevem como algo acontece, referindo-se a um verbo (1). Mas podem também matizar outra palavra: um adjetivo (2), outro advérbio (3) ou um particípio (4).

1 Sue **drives** carefully.  
... dirige cuidadosamente.

2 She is **especially** careful in fog.  
... especialmente cuidadosa.

3 She doesn't drive **particularly** slowly.  
... especialmente devagar.

4 And she's always so **well** prepared on a long trip, too.  
... bem preparada.

## A forma dos advérbios

- Na maioria das vezes, o adjetivo recebe o acréscimo de *-ly*: David is a **slow** reader. He reads **slowly**. Particularidades ortográficas como **easy** – **easily**; **terrible** – **terribly**; **automatic** – **automatically**: veja página 111.

- Alguns advérbios são iguais aos adjetivos correspondentes: **early** (adiantado / cedo), **late** (tardio / tarde), **fast** (rápido / rapidamente), **hard** (duro / duramente).

Atenção: It rained **hard**. Choveu fortemente. — It **hardly** rained. Quase não choveu.

Ed came **late**. O Ed chegou tarde. — Have you seen him **lately**? ... Você o viu ultimamente?

Caso especial: **good** (adjetivo) – **well** (advérbio): She's a **good** player. She plays **well**.

## Usa-se o adjetivo no lugar do advérbio após alguns verbos:

Determinados verbos vêm com adjetivo, e não advérbio. A palavra a que o adjetivo se refere é um substantivo ou pronome, e não um verbo. O adjetivo descreve como alguém ou alguma coisa é.

– verbos usados para descrever um estado: **be** (ser), **seem** (estar), **become** (parecer), **stay/remain** (tornar-se / ficar).

– verbos usados para descrever uma qualidade: **look** (aparentar), **sound** (soar), **feel** (sentir-se), **taste** (ter gosto), **smell** (ter cheiro)

He **seemed/looked** **excited** (~~excitedly~~). Ele pareceu agitado.

## Resumo

- Adjetivos descrevem como alguém / alguma coisa é. Advérbios descrevem como algo acontece.
- Após **be**, **seem**, **look**, **sound**, **feel** e **smell**, entre outros verbos, vem não advérbio, mas adjetivo.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a My colleague speaks English very well. ✓  
 b My colleague speaks English very good.
- 1 a I always feel tired. I work too hard.  
 b I always feel tired. I work too hardly.
- 2 a We're good prepared for our next meeting.  
 b We're well prepared for our next meeting.
- 3 a My sister doesn't seem very happily.  
 b My sister doesn't seem very happy.
- 4 a My boss is serious ill.  
 b My boss is seriously ill.
- 5 a Harry was hurt quite bad in the accident.  
 b Harry was hurt quite badly in the accident.
- 6 a We don't know our neighbours very well.  
 b We don't know our neighbours very good.

**B Rewrite these sentences using an adverb instead of an adjective.**

Your English is really good. You speak English really well.

- 1 David is an extremely careful driver. David drives .....
- 2 They are good dancers. They dance .....
- 3 She is a really fast runner. She runs .....
- 4 We have regular meetings. We meet .....
- 5 His death was completely unexpected. He died .....

**C Complete these conversations with adjectives or adverbs.**

- 1 A: Sorry I'm ..... (late/late) but we've been so busy ..... (late/late).  
 B: That's OK, but be ..... (careful/carefully) – don't work too ..... (hard/hardly).  
 A: I won't. I've been sleeping ..... (bad/badly) – that's the ..... (real/really) problem.
- 2 A: Hello, Jane! Did you have a ..... (good/well) holiday?  
 B: Yes, thanks. The weather was ..... (beautiful/beautifully) – it ..... (hard/hardly) rained.  
 A: Really? That's ..... (unusual/unusually) for England, isn't it?
- 3 A: What's the matter with Don? He looks so ..... (unhappy/unhappily).  
 B: He's been ..... (terrible/terribly) worried about losing his job since the management changed ..... (sudden/suddenly) last month.  
 A: Oh dear, and his wife's job isn't very ..... (good/well) paid either, is it?
- 4 A: I've just heard the ..... (terrible/terribly) news about your sister's accident. Was she ..... (bad/badly) injured?  
 B: No, thank goodness. She was only ..... (slight/slightly) hurt, but her boyfriend's injuries are more ..... (serious/seriously).  
 A: There have been so many ..... (bad/badly) accidents on that part of the road. It's really ..... (dangerous/dangerously).
- 5 A: I feel so ..... (angry/angrily). Our new neighbours are really ..... (noisy/noisily). Their music is always so ..... (loud/loudly) – I just can't concentrate on my work ..... (proper/properly).  
 B: Why don't you ask them ..... (nice/nicely) to turn it down?  
 A: I did last week and since then they've had two ..... (noisy/noisily) parties which finished really ..... (late/late)!

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 O John sentiu-se muito mal (terrible). Ele estava terrivelmente cansado.
- 2 Normalmente ele não sonha muito. Uma noite ele teve um sonho incomum.
- 3 De repente ele ouviu algo. Um barulho repentino o acordou.
- 4 O filho e os amigos dele estavam ouvindo música alta e conversando alto na sala de estar.
- 5 "Você parece estar com muita raiva", disse o filho dele. "Por que você está me olhando com tanta raiva?"



A: I'd like to go by train. It's more comfortable.

B: Yes, but it's ~~much more cheaper~~ <sup>much cheaper</sup> by bus.

A: True, but on a train I can get up and walk about. If you're as tall as me, bus seats are murder.

B: Well, shall we fly then? Flying is faster ~~as~~ <sup>than</sup> going by bus or train.

A: Yes, but the leg-room on charter planes is so small.

B: Is it? I thought the seats on a plane were the same ~~like~~ <sup>as</sup> on a train.

### Formação dos graus de adjetivos e advérbios

- O comparativo e o superlativo são formados pelo acréscimo de -er/-est, respectivamente, nos seguintes casos:
  - adjetivos monossílabos (particularidades ortográficas: veja página 111): tall – taller – (the) tallest
  - adjetivos dissílabos terminados em -y (angry, dirty, easy, funny, happy, lovely, lucky etc.)  
Nesse caso, y transforma-se em i: easy – easier – (the) easiest.
  - advérbios que são iguais aos adjetivos (early, late, hard, fast, long):  
Who gets up early/earlier/(the) earliest? *Quem se levanta cedo / mais cedo / mais cedo do que os outros?*
- O comparativo e o superlativo são formados antepondo more/most ao adjetivo nos seguintes casos:
  - adjetivos polissílabos (exceto adjetivos dissílabos terminados em y): careful – more careful – (the) most careful
  - advérbios terminados em ly: Ed works carefully / more carefully / most carefully.  
No lugar de more/most quickly, slowly e loudly, frequentemente se usam formas terminadas em er/est.  
Ed worked slower / (the) slowest. Who sang louder / (the) loudest?
- Exceções e formas especiais
  - good / well – better – (the) best *bom – melhor – o melhor*
  - much – more – most *muito – mais – o mais*
  - bad(ly) – worse – (the) worst *mal – pior – o pior*
  - little – less – least *pouco – menos – o menos*
  - far – further – furthest *longe – mais longe – o mais longe*

### Compare:

- O comparativo de igualdade (Igualando duas pessoas ou duas coisas) utiliza as:
    - I'm as careful as Phil. I drive as carefully as Phil. ... *tão cuidadoso quanto Phil.*
    - I'm not as careful as Ann. I don't drive as carefully as Ann. ... *não tão cuidadoso quanto Ann.*
- As é posposto também a the same: Your coat is the same colour as (like) mine.

Após adjetivos e advérbios no grau comparativo (de superioridade ou de inferioridade), usa-se than no lugar de as.  
 Dave is taller than (as) his sister. *O Dave é maior do que a irmã.*  
 The book is more exciting than (as) the film. *O livro é mais interessante do que o filme.*  
 It all happened sooner than (as) expected. *Tudo aconteceu mais cedo do que o esperado.*  
 Sonia sings much better than (much more better as) Angela. *A Sonia canta muito melhor do que a Angela.*

- Após as e than, os pronomes pessoais vêm na forma oblíqua.  
 Don isn't as tall as me. But I'm older than him. ... *não tão alto quanto eu. ... mais velho do que ele.*

### Resumo

- Grau: adjetivos curtos: -er/est. Adjetivos mais longos e advérbios terminados em ly: more/most
- Grau de igualdade: as. Após o grau de comparação: than



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a This exercise is easier than the last one.  
b This exercise is easier than the last one. ✓
- 1 a She's the most important person in the firm.  
b She's the importantest person in the firm.
- 2 a He speaks English much better than me.  
b He speaks English much more better than me.
- 3 a I do more work as my colleague.  
b I do more work than my colleague.
- 4 a He arrived so early as I did.  
b He arrived as early as I did.
- 5 a This coat is cheaper than that one.  
b This coat is more cheap than that one.
- 6 a I've made the same mistakes like you.  
b I've made the same mistakes as you.

**B Make comparisons and add as or than if necessary.**

This film is ~~more interesting~~ (interesting) ~~than~~ the film we saw last week.

- 1 It's much ..... (hard) to find a job today ..... It was ten years ago.
- 2 A glass of water in this restaurant costs the same ..... a glass of wine. Normally wine is ..... (expensive) ..... water.
- 3 It's much ..... (difficult) to get a cheap flight to New York ..... I had expected.
- 4 The blue pullover is the ..... (cheap) of them all, but is it really the ..... (good)?
- 5 I've just had some bad news. My grandmother's illness is ..... (serious) ..... the doctors first thought.
- 6 What's the ..... (bad) thing that has ever happened to you?

**C Make questions using comparatives.**

Sorry. What did you say? Can you speak a bit ~~louder~~, please?

- 1 This restaurant is too expensive. Can we go to a ..... one?
- 2 You're speaking too fast. I don't understand. Could you speak ....., please?
- 3 This jacket is too small. Do you have a ..... one, please?
- 4 Sue didn't seem very well when I last saw her. Is she ..... now?
- 5 I'm sure you're always tired because you go to bed so late. Why don't you go a bit .....?
- 6 The questions in the first part of the test were easy. Were they easy in the second part, too, or were they .....?

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 A viagem para Leeds é longa, muito mais longa do que imaginei.
- 2 Você tem a mesma jaqueta que eu.
- 3 Este ano ficamos num hotel mais afastado da praia do que no ano passado.
- 4 Minha irmã e eu somos gêmeas, mas ela é muito mais magra do que eu.
- 5 No ano passado tivemos a pior colheita desde 1990.



A: Which country do you like best?

B: I like ~~very much~~ <sup>Italy very much</sup> Italy.

A: How often do you go there?

B: We ~~go usually~~ <sup>usually go</sup> once a year, in the summer.

A: Are you going this year?

B: Yes, but we are going ~~this year~~ <sup>later this year</sup> later. In October.

### Categorias de advérbio

- Existem diferentes tipos de advérbio. Dois já foram apresentados na unit 39.

Advérbios de tempo respondem à pergunta "quando?": Dave phoned **yesterday**.

Advérbios de frequência (always etc.) respondem à pergunta "quantas vezes?": It's **never** cold.

Advérbios de modo (muitas vezes terminados em ly: veja unit 39) respondem à pergunta "como?": I slept **badly**.

Advérbios de lugar respondem à pergunta "(de/para) onde?": London is north of **here**.

Advérbios de intensidade (very etc.: veja unit 39) respondem à pergunta "quanto(s)/a(s)?": He's **very** old.

Advérbios de frase referem-se ao enunciado todo: **Perhaps** the weather will improve.

### Posição dos advérbios

- Existem três posições possíveis para um advérbio: no início da oração, no fim da oração ou no meio da oração. No meio da oração é:

antes do verbo principal: Don **never** smokes.

após um (o primeiro) verbo auxiliar: We **have just** eaten supper.

após o verbo principal ou o auxiliar be: Angela **is** always late. She **is** just coming.

O advérbio normalmente **não** pode ficar entre verbo e objeto.

I **never** smoke cigars.

I ate fish **yesterday**.

- Advérbios de tempo curtos (ever, just, now, soon, still e already) ficam na maioria das vezes no meio da oração. Outros advérbios de tempo (today/yesterday/tomorrow, indicações com ago, horários, períodos do dia etc.) ficam no fim da frase.

I'm still tired. I **worked** all last night.

Ed **has just** phoned. He'll arrive tomorrow.

- Advérbios de frequência (always, usually, often, sometimes, rarely, never) ficam na maioria das vezes no meio da oração. Expressões com every ficam no fim da oração.

It's **always** dark. We **never** have enough light.

I meet Tony **every** day.

- Advérbios de modo ficam na maioria das vezes no fim da oração.

He planned the crime **carefully**.

I buy my vegetables **at the market**.

Quando ocorrem vários advérbios no fim da oração, vale a sequência: 1. modo, 2. lugar, 3. tempo.

Don gets [modo:] **slowly** [lugar:] **out of bed** [tempo:] **at six o'clock**.

- Advérbios de intensidade ficam na maioria das vezes antes da palavra de referência, mas após o verbo (e o objeto).

It's **very** cold here.

I **like** Berlin **a lot**.

- Advérbios de frase ficam no início, no fim ou no meio da oração.

**Perhaps** Dave will come. / Dave will **perhaps** come. / Dave will come **perhaps**.

**probably** e **certainly** ficam antes do verbo auxiliar negado: I **probably/certainly** won't come.

### Resumo

- Meio da frase: antes do verbo principal, após o verbo auxiliar, após be; **nenhum** advérbio entre verbo e objeto!
- Sequência adverbial no fim da frase: modo – lugar – tempo



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a I go often to the cinema.  
b I often go to the cinema. ✓
- 1 a I don't usually get much post.  
b I don't get usually much post.
- 2 a We've always had a lot of pets.  
b We've had always a lot of pets.
- 3 a We are still looking for a new flat.  
b We are looking still for a new flat.
- 4 a Sue has every day lunch in the canteen.  
b Sue has lunch in the canteen every day.
- 5 a Dave probably won't be on time.  
b Dave won't be probably on time.
- 6 a We're going to London next month.  
b We're going next month to London.

**B Rewrite the sentences with the adverb in brackets in the correct position.**

Bill spends his holidays in Italy. (usually)

Bill usually spends his holidays in Italy.

- 1 I'm busy. (often)  
2 I won't be able to come tomorrow. (probably)  
3 He speaks Spanish. (very well)  
4 Jane and I meet. (every week)  
5 I didn't go to work. (yesterday)  
6 We've bought a small sailing boat. (just)

**C Complete the dialogues by ticking the correct position for the adverbs in brackets.**

A: Where do [ ] you [✓] spend Christmas? (usually)

B: We go [ ] to my parents' [✓]. (every year)

- 1 A: Do you go [ ] to your cottage in the country [ ]? (every weekend)  
B: Normally yes, but we [ ] won't [ ] be able to go next weekend. (probably)
- 2 A: Have you [ ] got [ ] a headache? (still)  
B: No, I took [ ] an aspirin [ ] and it's better now. (a couple of hours ago)
- 3 A: Do you [ ] buy [ ] your wine in France? (always)  
B: No, there's a good wine shop in town. We buy it [ ] sometimes [ ]. (there)
- 4 A: Did you [ ] go to the bank [ ]? (yesterday)  
B: No, I didn't have time. I'll [ ] go [ ] today. (in my lunch break)
- 5 A: What do [ ] you [ ] do in the summer? (normally)  
B: We go [ ] to France [ ]. (every summer)

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Eu já li este livro.  
2 Muitas vezes viajo (to go on holiday) no inverno.  
3 A Mary vai para Manchester toda semana.  
4 Vi o Tom no cinema ontem.  
5 Talvez vamos visitar nossos amigos nos EUA no ano que vem.





- A: Do you want another <sup>piece of toast</sup> toast?  
 B: No thanks. I must get back to the computer.  
 A: Can you help me with my <sup>homework</sup> homeworks first? I need some <sup>information</sup> informations about Orson Welles.  
 B: Why don't you look on the Internet?  
 A: That's what I want to do, but can you give me <sup>some advice</sup> an advice where to look?

## Substantivos contáveis (countable nouns) versus substantivos incontáveis (non-countable nouns)

- Muitos substantivos são contáveis, p.ex. book: a/one book, two books, three books.  
 Substantivos incontáveis não têm plural e não vêm com a/an anteposto: weather: ~~a/one~~ weather, two weathers



Isso vale também para substantivos incontáveis com adjetivo:

What (~~What a~~) fantastic weather! *Que tempo maravilhoso!*  
 You speak excellent (~~an excellent~~) German. *Você fala um alemão ótimo.*  
 terrible traffic *trânsito terrível*, impossible behaviour *um comportamento impossível*  
 absolute chaos *um caos absoluto*, lots of luck / stress *uma grande sorte, um grande estresse*

## Contáveis em português – incontáveis em inglês



Certos substantivos contáveis em português são incontáveis em inglês.

That is useful information. (~~Those are useful informations.~~) *Esta é uma informação útil.*  
 Is this furniture new? (~~Are these furnitures new?~~) *Estes móveis são novos?*

advice <i>conselho(s)</i>	bread <i>pão(ões)</i>	cloth, material <i>tecido(s)</i>
information <i>informação(ções)</i>	toast <i>torrada(s)</i>	furniture <i>móvel(eis)</i>
work <i>trabalho(s)</i>	soap <i>sabonete(s)</i>	damage <i>dano(s)</i>
homework <i>lição(ões) de casa</i>	hair <i>cabelo(s)</i>	knowledge <i>conhecimento(s)</i>
housework <i>trabalho(s) de casa</i>	paper <i>papel (éis)</i>	progress <i>progresso(s)</i>
		proof <i>prova(s)</i>

- Antes de um substantivo incontável, podem ocorrer some, any, a lot of e much, mas não many.  
 She gave me some important advice. *Ela me deu alguns conselhos importantes.*  
 The teacher didn't give us any homework. *A professora não nos deu lição de casa.*  
 We have a lot of information (~~many informations~~) now. *Nós temos muitas informações.*  
 How much proof is there? (~~How many proofs are there?~~) *Quantas provas existem?*
- Para expressar o singular de advice, information, work, homework, bread, toast, soap, paper, cloth / material e furniture, pode-se usar a expressão a piece of.  
 I need a piece of advice / information. *Preciso de um conselho / uma informação.*



## Resumo

- Substantivos incontáveis: **sem** plural, **sem** uso de a/an ou many.
- Em inglês, são incontáveis, entre outros, estes substantivos: advice, help, information, work, toast, bread, hair



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a This information is very interesting. ✓  
 b These informations are very interesting.
- 1 a Sue gave me some good advice.  
 b Sue gave me a good advice.
- 2 a Has all your new furniture arrived?  
 b Have all your new furnitures arrived?
- 3 a This is a really hard job.  
 b This is a really hard work.
- 4 a Can I have a toast, please?  
 b Can I have a piece of toast, please?
- 5 a What a wonderful music!  
 b What wonderful music!
- 6 a The storm did a lot of damage.  
 b The storm did a lot of damages.

**B Correct any plural forms which are not possible.**

We've just ordered a lot of new furniture~~s~~, for example two leather armchairs.

- 1 Although my son does a lot of homeworks, he doesn't seem to have made a lot of progresses this year.  
 2 My teacher at school always gave me useful advices. When I wanted to go abroad, she gave me a lot of informations about the various possibilities.  
 3 I have a lot of works at the moment. My boss always gives me more jobs to do than my colleague.  
 4 The police haven't made any progresses in the murder case. The public has given them a lot of helps and they have arrested two peoples but they still don't have any proofs that they are the murderers.

**C Complete the following dialogues by underlining the correct forms.**

A: I have such a lot of work/works at the moment.

B: Do you think you will finish it/them before your holiday?

- 1 A: Your hair look/looks nice.

B: Thanks. I had it/them cut yesterday.

- 2 A: I have a lot of homework/homeworks today.

B: Me, too. I have to write about Charles Dickens. I hope I can find some information/informations on the Internet.

- 3 A: Would you like another bread / another piece of bread?

B: No, thanks. Let's finish breakfast and go out. It's such a lovely weather / such lovely weather.

- 4 A: Sue speaks such good Italian / such a good Italian. Let's get her an Italian cookery book for her birthday.

B: I don't know. Her children say she only cooks spaghetti/spaghetthis anyway.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Eles têm provas suficientes de que ele é o assassino?  
 2 Você fez muitos progressos este ano.  
 3 Ela compra sempre materiais caros.  
 4 Meus cabelos são longos demais.  
 5 Ele fala bem o francês, e seus conhecimentos de espanhol não são maus.



A: The news <sup>is</sup> ~~are~~ good – the weather in the Andes is good.  
 B: Great!  
 A: I bought <sup>some new / a new pair of</sup> ~~a new~~ sunglasses today. I paid over 150 <sup>dollars</sup> ~~dollar~~.  
 B: Well, you have to protect your eyes up in the snow, don't you? Have you started packing?  
 A: Yes. You need so much for a <sup>two-week</sup> ~~two weeks~~ expedition – although two weeks <sup>isn't</sup> ~~aren't~~ really a long time.

## Substantivos que só existem no plural

As "parelhas" (também chamadas *pluralia tantum*) são palavras que designam coisas que têm duas partes iguais (p.ex., óculos). Essas palavras só existem no plural.

I'm looking for ~~some red jeans~~ <sup>a red jeans</sup>. Eu procuro um jeans vermelho.

These jeans were ~~(This jeans was)~~ expensive. Este jeans foi caro.

Where ~~are~~ my glasses? ~~(Where is my glasses?)~~ Onde estão meus óculos?

Para expressar o singular dessas palavras, pode-se usar a *pair of*.

I need a clean ~~pair of trousers~~ / a pair of scissors. Preciso de uma calça limpa / de uma tesoura.

glasses óculos

pants calcinha(s), cueca(s)

jeans jeans

scissors tesoura(s)

tights meia(s)-calça(s)

trousers calça(s)

binoculars binóculo(s)

pyjamas pijama(s)

shorts shorts

headphones fone(s) de ouvido

Também só existem no plural os substantivos police (*polícia*), people (*gente/pessoa(s)*), stairs (*escada(s)*), clothes (*roupa(s)*), thanks (*agradecimento(s)*), surroundings (*arredore(s)*), outskirts (*cercanias*).

The police ~~are~~ <sup>is</sup> here. They ~~are~~ <sup>is</sup> looking everywhere. A polícia está aqui. Ela está procurando por todo lado.

These stairs are steep. Esta escada é íngreme. Clothes are expensive. Roupas são caras.

Atenção: news e the United States concordam com o verbo no singular, apesar de terminarem em s.

The news ~~is~~ <sup>are</sup> good. As notícias são boas.

The United States ~~is~~ <sup>are</sup> a rich country. Os Estados Unidos são um país rico.

## Indicações de quantidade através de números, medidas, dinheiro

Medidas e dinheiro têm – como quase todos os outros substantivos – um s no plural.

ten kilometres dez quilômetros six litres seis litros two pounds/dollars duas libras/dólares

O verbo fica no singular quando se refere a uma soma, uma quantidade ou uma distância.

1000 dollars ~~is~~ <sup>are</sup> a lot of money. Three kilometres ~~isn't~~ <sup>aren't</sup> far. 70 years ~~is~~ <sup>are</sup> a long time.

Quando um substantivo com número + hífen fica antes de outro substantivo e aquela expressão tem função adjetiva, não ocorre o s do plural.

an 18-hour day uma jornada de 18 horas a four-star hotel um hotel de quatro estrelas

O numeral million (assim como hundred e thousand) permanece sem s após outro numeral.

6 million (~~millions~~) people 6 milhões de pessoas ten million (~~millions~~) two hundred thousand

## Resumo

■ Sempre no plural as "parelhas": police, stairs, thanks... – mas não news, nem United States

■ Medidas, dinheiro: com -s (ten metres, six dollars); quantidades + verbo: no singular (two hours is a long time); "adjetivos com hífen": sem -s (a four-star hotel)



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a We stayed in a five-star hotel. ✓  
b We stayed in a five-stars hotel.

- 1 a I've just had a bad news.  
b I've just had some bad news.
- 2 a I need a new pair of sunglasses.  
b I need a new sunglasses.
- 3 a She has a three years old son.  
b She has a three-year-old son.
- 4 a Your pyjamas is on the bed.  
b Your pyjamas are on the bed.
- 5 a I bought a ten-kilo bag of potatoes.  
b I bought a ten-kilos bag of potatoes.
- 6 a The firm invested ten millions in the project.  
b The firm invested ten million in the project.

**B Singular or plural? Underline the correct form of the verb.**

My shorts is/are dirty.

- 1 Your trousers is/are at the cleaners.
- 2 The news is/are on at 8 o'clock.
- 3 Ten kilometres is/are too far to walk.
- 4 Twenty-five minutes is/are a long time to wait for a bus!
- 5 The police has/have just come.
- 6 Those stairs is/are dangerous.
- 7 1000 euros is/are a lot of money.
- 8 Your new glasses looks/look great.

**C Make complete questions.**

Can your grandmother manage alone or ~~are~~ the stairs too steep?

- 1 Where ..... clothes cheaper – in Brazil or in England?
- 2 How much ..... your new sunglasses?
- 3 I've got my discman but where ..... my headphones?
- 4 What do you think – ..... nine hundred dollars too much for this picture?
- 5 What size ..... your jeans?
- 6 ..... the scissors in the kitchen?

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Mais de 3 milhões de pessoas estão desempregadas aqui.
- 2 Os Estados Unidos nunca tiveram um presidente do sexo feminino.
- 3 A roupa certa é muito importante para uma entrevista.
- 4 Este é teu binóculo?
- 5 A polícia na Inglaterra não está armada.



- A: I'm just going to the shop – we need <sup>some</sup> ~~any~~ more milk.  
 B: Can you get something for me, too?  
 A: What? I wasn't planning to go <sup>anywhere</sup> ~~somewhere~~ else, just to the shop for the milk.  
 B: I need some paper for my printer.  
 A: Sorry, but I don't really want to have to go into town. I've got hardly <sup>any</sup> ~~some~~ time this morning.  
 B: OK, I'll go myself. I'll get the milk too, if you like.

### some e any em orações afirmativas

- Antes de substantivos incontáveis (veja unit 42), **some** significa "um pouco de/algum/alguma"; antes de substantivos contáveis, significa "alguns/algumas". Frequentemente, não há correspondente para **some** em português.

We need **some** milk and **some** sugar. Nós precisamos de (um pouco de) leite e de (um pouco de) açúcar.  
 There are **some** biscuits in the cupboard. Há algumas bolachas no armário.

- **not ... any** é a negação de **some** e significa "nenhum/a".

There isn't **any** bread and we don't have **any** rolls. Não há pão e não temos pãezinhos.

- **some** é usado sobretudo em afirmações; **any** (com **not**), em negações.

I'd like **some** salad. I don't want **any** bread. I have **some** dollars, but not **any** pounds.

**any** também pode ser usado sem **not** quando a idéia é negativa.

I'm too tired to do **any** more work. Estou cansada demais para fazer qualquer outro trabalho.

We have hardly **any** money. We never have **any** money. Quase não temos dinheiro. Nós nunca temos dinheiro.

- **any** é muito usado em orações com **if**.

If there are **any** tickets, we could go to the theatre. If we have **any** time, we can visit Phil.

- **any** tem também o significado de "qualquer".

**Any** car costs money. Qualquer carro custa dinheiro. Use **any** colour. Use qualquer cor.

### some e any em perguntas

- Geralmente, usa-se **any** em perguntas.

Have you got **any** money? Você tem dinheiro? Are there **any** photos? Há fotos?

- **some** é usado em perguntas quando se espera uma resposta positiva (**yes**) – sobretudo em pedidos e ofertas.

Can I have **some** water, please? Would you like **some** help?

### someone/somebody, anyone/anybody etc.

- Para **someone/somebody, something** etc., valem as mesmas regras.

someone/somebody	something	somewhere
(not) anyone/anybody	(not) anything	(not) anywhere

Não há diferença de significado entre **someone** e **somebody**; nem **anyone** e **anybody**.

### Resumo

- **some** em afirmações; **any** em negações.
- perguntas: na maioria das vezes, **any**; em pedidos e ofertas, **some**



## A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?

- a Please buy any orange juice when you go shopping.  
b Please buy some orange juice when you go shopping. ✓

- 1 a We need any more bread.  
b We need some more bread.

- 2 a I haven't got anything to wear.  
b I haven't got something to wear.

- 3 a Jane never has any time.  
b Jane never has some time.

- 4 a I've got hardly any time this week.  
b I've got hardly some time this week.

- 5 a This supermarket never has any fresh vegetables.  
b This supermarket never has some fresh vegetables.

- 6 a I didn't see anyone I knew at the party.  
b I didn't see someone I knew at the party.

## B Underline the correct form.

Sue never has any/some money.

- 1 I'd like any/some grey jeans but I can't find any/some anywhere/somewhere.  
2 Jane seems very upset about anything/something. I asked if I could help, but she wouldn't say anything/something.  
3 Please buy any/some bread and any/some rolls but don't get any/some cake – there's still any/some left.  
4 There was hardly anyone/someone at church this morning. I didn't see anyone/someone I knew.  
5 I still haven't got anything/something for Jane's birthday. I want to give her anything/something for her new flat.

## C Complete these dialogues with some/any, something/anything, someone/anyone or somewhere/anywhere.

- 1 A: Could you do ..... for me, please?  
B: Sure, but I don't have ..... time this evening.
- 2 A: I've rung the office several times but I can't get hold of .....  
B: There must be ..... there.
- 3 A: I can't find my glasses .....  
B: They must be here ..... I think there's ..... under the newspaper. Look there.
- 4 A: What time shall we meet tomorrow – ..... time in the morning?  
B: No, it will have to be in the afternoon because ..... is coming to repair the heating in the morning.
- 5 A: I haven't done ..... all day. It's been wonderful!  
B: And I've been really busy. I haven't had ..... time to relax.

## D Translate the following sentences.

- 1 Há orelhão em algum lugar?  
2 Nós quase não temos móveis em nosso novo apartamento.  
3 Eu não estudei gramática esta semana.  
4 Se ainda houver queijo na geladeira, você não vai precisar comprar (nenhum).  
5 Não tenho notícias (to hear from) da Susan há dois meses. Você teve alguma?



- A: We've visited ~~the most~~ <sup>most</sup> places in the guidebook now.  
 B: Yes, but we haven't been on the river yet. I'd like to go on a boat trip.  
 A: OK. I think the boats go ~~at~~ <sup>every</sup> 30 minutes.  
 B: If we go now, we'll be able to get a boat at one o'clock.  
 A: We've got ~~time enough~~ <sup>enough time</sup>. Let's go and have a snack first.  
 B: Yes, OK. I'm feeling a bit hungry, too.

**much – many – a lot (of)**

- much é usado com substantivos incontáveis; many, com substantivos contáveis que estejam no plural.  
 There isn't much milk. How much butter is there? *Não há muito leite. Quanta manteiga...?*  
 There aren't many men. How many women are there? *Não há muitos homens. Quantas mulheres...?*
- much e many geralmente são usados em perguntas e negativas. Em orações afirmativas, usa-se geralmente a lot (of).  
 Is there much snow? No, there isn't much snow. There was a lot of snow yesterday.  
 Can you see many people? No, I can't see many people. A lot of people have stayed at home.

**each – every**

- each significa "cada"; every significa "todo/a(s)"  
 Eso isn't the price for five tickets. Each ticket costs €50! *Cada bilhete (cada um)...*  
 Every single (Each single) room is booked. *Todo quarto (todos)...*
- every significa "a cada" em indicações de frequência.  
 A boat goes every three days / every 20 minutes. ... *sai a cada três dias/a cada 20 minutos.*

! Somente each pode ocorrer antes de of: Each (Every) of them is an expert. *Cada um deles é especialista.*

**most**

- ! Antes da indicação de quantidade most, não há the.  
 Most (The most) people would like to have a lot of money. *A maioria das pessoas...*  
 Após mosts, pode ocorrer of + the quando se fala de determinadas pessoas/coisas.  
 Most of the people here are new. *A maioria destas pessoas...*

**none – nobody – nothing**

- ! Antes de of, ocorre somente none, não nobody/nothing.  
 None (Nobody) of my friends / of them knows. *Nenhum dos meus amigos / nenhum deles...*  
 None (Nothing) of the report / of it is true. *Nada deste relato / nada disso...*

**enough**

- enough ocorre após adjetivo/advérbio, mas antes de substantivo.  
 Tom is old enough. ...idade suficiente. Ann has enough money (money enough). ...dinheiro suficiente.

**Resumo**

- much = "muito/a"; many = "muitos/as". Em afirmativas, no entanto, geralmente a lot (of)
- each = "cada um"; every = "um de todos/as". Antes de of, somente each
- Antes de most, não há the.
- none (e não nobody/nothing) antes de of
- enough fica antes de substantivo.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a Nobody of my colleagues wanted to go to the Christmas party.  
 b None of my colleagues wanted to go to the Christmas party. ✓
- 1 a How much money do you have?  
 b How many money do you have?
- 2 a I know the most people at this party.  
 b I know most people at this party.
- 3 a The bus goes every 15 minutes.  
 b The bus goes all 15 minutes.
- 4 a Not much people live in this part of town.  
 b Not many people live in this part of town.
- 5 a No one of the students failed the exam.  
 b None of the students failed the exam.
- 6 a I don't have enough time to help you today.  
 b I don't have time enough to help you today.

**B Answer these questions.**

- A: How often should I take these tablets?  
 B: (A cada quatro horas) Every four hours.
- 1 A: Do all your colleagues speak English?  
 B: Yes, (a maioria) ..... of them do.
- 2 A: How many of your friends smoke?  
 B: (Nenhum) ..... of them.
- 3 A: How often does the bus go to the airport?  
 B: There's one (a cada dez minutos) .....
- 4 A: Are you busy?  
 B: Busy? I have (trabalho suficiente) ..... for a month!
- 5 A: How was the exam? Could you answer all the questions?  
 B: Yes, (a maioria das questões) ..... were easy.
- 6 A: Did you go to the concert?  
 B: Yes, there were (um monte de pessoas) ..... there.

**C Underline the correct answers.**

- Have you got enough room / room enough?
- 1 Did you see many police / much police at the demonstration?
- 2 I use my mobile phone a lot / much.
- 3 Sam won every match / each match last season.
- 4 We didn't have time enough / enough time to see everything in London, but we saw the most things / most things we wanted to see.
- 5 None of / Nobody of the tourists were satisfied with the hotel and there were a lot of / much complaints.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 A maioria das pessoas aqui vem da Espanha.  
 2 Nenhum de nós entendeu a lição de casa.  
 3 Eu vou ao cabeleireiro a cada dois meses.  
 4 Você pode deixar sua bolsa aqui. Eu tenho espaço suficiente.  
 5 Ela sabe muito sobre política.



- A: Have you met Tom's <sup>two</sup> ~~both~~ children?  
 B: No, I haven't. His daughter is very musical, a singer, isn't she?  
 A: Yes, everybody <sup>says</sup> ~~say~~ she's very good.  
 B: Have you ever heard her?  
 A: No, but <sup>we're all going</sup> ~~we're going all~~ to a concert next month where she's singing. Do you want to come?  
 B: When is it?

### all – everybody – everything

“todos/as” nem sempre corresponde a all.

Everybody sang “Happy Birthday”. I knew **everybody**. *Todos (Todo o mundo)*  
 Ed invited **20 people**. **Everybody** / **All of them** came. *Todos (com referência às pessoas mencionadas)*  
 I tried **six salads**. **All of them** were lovely. *Todas elas (com referência às coisas mencionadas)*

everybody/everyone ocorre com o verbo no singular: **Everybody** likes Tom. *Todos gostam do Tom.*

“Tudo” corresponde a **all** somente quando significa “a única coisa que”.

**All (that)** I know is the date. *A única coisa que sei é a data.*

**Everything** is so expensive. *Tudo é tão caro!*

**Anything** can happen at Ed's parties! *Tudo (qualquer coisa) pode acontecer na festa do Ed!*

I'll do **anything** to help you. *Eu farei tudo para ajudá-lo.*

### both – the two – either – neither

■ **both** corresponde a “ambos”. **Both** enfatiza não somente um, mas também o outro. “Os dois” sem ênfase corresponde a **the two**.

The parents are divorced and **the two children** live with their father. *...ambos os/os dois filhos...*

**Mas: Both children** live with the father, not just the son. *Os dois filhos...*

Do you know **the two (people)** by the door? *...as duas pessoas...?*

**Mas: Do you know them both**, or only the man? *...você conhece ambos...?*

■ **either e neither**

Which one would you like? You can have **either (map)**. *...ou um ou outro.*

I'm afraid **neither (map)** is very up to date. *...nenhum dos dois (nem um nem outro)...*

### A posição de all e both

■ **all e both** (às vezes com of) ocorrem antes de palavras como **my/these**.

**All (of)** our rooms have a view of the sea.

**Both (of)** those maps are new.

■ **all** ocorre com **the** quando se designam determinadas pessoas ou coisas; **both** pode ocorrer com ou sem **the**.

**All children** play. [geral] **All the children** (~~All children~~) are outside. They're playing in the park.

**Both / Both the / Both of the children** are outside. [mas não: ~~The both children~~]

■ **all e both** (como partes pospostas do sujeito no meio da frase) posicionam-se antes de um verbo principal, mas depois de um verbo auxiliar ou depois de **be** (veja unit 41).

They **all smoke** / They **are all smoking**. (~~They smoke all / are smoking all~~) *Todos eles fumam.*

The ladies **both drank** / **were both drinking** tea. (~~drank both / were drinking both~~) *As duas senhoras....*

### Resumo

- “tudo” e “todos/as” (pronomes) = geralmente **everything** e **everybody** (não ~~all~~ sozinho)
- “ambos/as” = **both** (“não somente, mas também”), quando enfatizado; “os dois/as duas” = **the two** (ou **either/neither**), sem ênfase.
- Posição: antes de um verbo principal; **all** ocorre com **the** quando se designam determinadas pessoas/coisas.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- 1 a Both my sisters are older than me. ✓  
b My both sisters are older than me.
- 2 a Do you know my two colleagues?  
b Do you know my both colleagues?
- 3 a All my friends are on holiday.  
b All friends are on holiday.
- 4 a All is so complicated.  
b Everything is so complicated.
- 5 a Everybody is here.  
b Everybody are here.
- 6 a My cousins all came to my wedding.  
b My cousins came all to my wedding.
- 7 a We both need a holiday.  
b We need both a holiday.

**B Cross out any articles which are not necessary.**

I like ~~the~~ both pullovers but I'm not sure about the jeans.

- 1 I know all the people in this room.
- 2 Do all the Brazilian children start school when they are six?
- 3 The drivers were OK, but the both cars were badly damaged in the accident.
- 4 All the children from my son's class visited him in hospital.
- 5 I've read all the books by this author.
- 6 The boy is good at languages and the both girls are too.

**C Add all or both to the following sentences.**

The children are playing in the garden. (all)

~~The children are all playing in the garden.~~

- 1 My brothers live abroad. (both)  
.....
- 2 We work really hard in our office. (all)  
.....
- 3 We left the building when the fire alarm rang. (all)  
.....
- 4 My sister and I moved last year. (both)  
.....
- 5 We've passed the exam. (all)  
.....
- 6 My mother and father have problems with their health. (both)  
.....

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Eu faria de tudo para conhecê-lo.
- 2 Meus dois vizinhos são muito gentis.
- 3 Todos os meus amigos queriam ajudar. Todo o mundo veio.
- 4 Nós dois compramos carro novo no ano passado.
- 5 Qual mala você quer? Você pode ficar com (to have) qualquer uma delas – a vermelha ou a preta.







**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a We're having fish for lunch. ✓  
b We're having fish for the lunch.
- 1 a In Britain children start the school at five.  
b In Britain children start school at five.
- 2 a The violence has increased in recent years.  
b Violence has increased in recent years.
- 3 a I usually get to work at 8 o'clock.  
b I usually get to the work at 8 o'clock.
- 4 a It's time to go to the bed.  
b It's time to go to bed.
- 5 a Life is not always easy.  
b The life is not always easy.
- 6 a The Tower Bridge was closed for repairs.  
b Tower Bridge was closed for repairs.

**B Cross out any articles which are incorrect.**

- ~~The~~ old people often need help. I often go shopping for the two old ladies next door.
- 1 I didn't go to the work yesterday. I stayed in the bed because I didn't feel well.
- 2 The children in my daughter's class are collecting money for the local church.
- 3 My grandfather is in the hospital at the moment. I can't visit him very often because the hospital is too far away.
- 4 My sister is studying at the Oxford University. She has a nice room near the university.
- 5 All the people in our village are against the new motorway. They are going to the Downing Street next week to hand in a petition.
- 6 The music is very important to me. I love the classical music and I play the piano.

**C Underline the correct forms.**

- 1 Last year we spent our holiday in the Turkey / Turkey. Our hotel was great – we had the breakfast / breakfast there and went to a restaurant for the dinner / dinner.
- 2 My son wants to go to the university / university in the United States / United States. Before he starts his course, he hopes to go to the Rocky Mountains / Rocky Mountains.
- 3 A lot of the people / people go to the Trafalgar Square / Trafalgar Square on New Year's Eve.
- 4 I visit my grandparents on Sundays. I usually go by the car / by car but if the weather is bad, I take the train / train. I take them out for the lunch / lunch.
- 5 The life / Life is very difficult for homeless people. Many of them need to go to the hospital / hospital but it is not always possible.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 O Mont Blanc fica na Suíça?
- 2 A cozinha britânica é melhor do que muitas pessoas pensam.
- 3 Eu adoro música. Eu toco violão todos os dias.
- 4 Nunca pego o ônibus – sempre vou de carro ao trabalho.
- 5 Meu vizinho está na prisão. A vida é dura lá.



- A: Tamara's son speaks <sup>such</sup> a good English now. I wish I had learned it <sup>as</sup> a child.  
 B: Well, he's lucky. He has a very good teacher, and Tamara pays for extra lessons.  
 A: I know. How often are they? Once <sup>a</sup> in a week, twice <sup>a</sup> the week?  
 B: Nearly every day, because that's more effective. But the lessons are very short.  
 A: Twenty minutes, <sup>half an</sup> a half hour?  
 B: No, just fifteen minutes. It's very practical because the teacher lives in the same building.

### Inglês: artigo indefinido – português: sem artigo

Em inglês, o artigo indefinido às vezes ocorre onde não haveria necessidade de artigo em português.

- indicações de profissão: Ann is a doctor. Her brother is a teacher.
- indicações de nacionalidade: Ed is an Englishman. (= Ed is English.)
- indicações ideológicas/religiosas: Sue is a socialist. / Tom is a Buddhist.
- indicações sobre hábitos esportivos e de lazer: Dave is a smoker / a beer drinker. Angela is a jogger and a tennis player.
- antes de member, expert, millionaire, optimist e pessimist: Is she a member / an expert / a millionaire? Dad is always an optimist / a pessimist.
- antes de headache e cold: I have a headache / a cold.
- após as: As a child I hated fish.

### a/an com o significado de "por"

"por" + indicações de tempo, medida e quantidade pede o uso do artigo indefinido.

- I train six times a week. ... *seis vezes por semana.*  
 They cost two euros a kilo. ... *dois euros o quilo.*

### half, such, quite + a/an

a/an vem após half e such, não antes.

- I'll see you in half an hour. ... *em meia hora.*  
 It was such a nice day. ... *um dia tão bonito.*

Atenção: antes de (adjetivo +) substantivo, não pode ocorrer so:

- He's such (so) an idiot. He's such (so) a stupid man.

■ Geralmente, a/an ocorre também após quite, e não antes.

- We got quite a shock. ... *um grande choque.*  
 It was quite a long journey. ... *uma viagem bem longa.*

### a/an não ocorre com substantivos incontáveis

Antes de substantivo incontável, não pode ocorrer a/an (veja unit 42).

- What (What a) wonderful weather! *Que tempo maravilhoso!*

### Resumo

- a/an após as e com indicações de profissão, convicção ideológica, hábitos
- a/an antes de member, expert, millionaire, optimist/pessimist, headache, cold
- a/an (e não the) com o significado de "por"
- a/an após half, such, quite, e não antes
- a/an não ocorre antes de substantivos incontáveis.



**A One sentence has a mistake. Which sentence is correct?**

- a My mother is a doctor. ✓  
b My mother is doctor.
- 1 a I learn English once in a week.  
b I learn English once a week.
- 2 a What a good advice!  
b What good advice!
- 3 a Let's meet in half an hour.  
b Let's meet in a half hour.
- 4 a My boss is a chain smoker.  
b My boss is chain smoker.
- 5 a Bill is member of the swimming club.  
b Bill is a member of the swimming club.
- 6 a We gave her money as present.  
b We gave her money as a present.

**B Underline the correct forms.**

- 1 A: It's such a lovely day / so a lovely day! Let's walk round the lake.  
B: It's such a long way / so a long way. It'll take us at least a half hour / half an hour to get there.
- 2 A: Is your husband still member / a member of the rowing club?  
B: Yes, he trains once in a week / once a week.
- 3 A: As student / As a student, I had a room with a strange family. The man was a drinker / drinker.  
B: In my family the wife was alcoholic / an alcoholic and the husband was anarchist / an anarchist!
- 4 A: I'd like a half / half a pumpkin and how much are the mushrooms?  
B: They're four euros a kilo / the kilo.
- 5 A: You're expert / an expert on Malta. Is this a good time of year to go there?  
B: You know me – I'm optimist / an optimist. I went this time last year for three weeks and had such a good weather / such good weather.

**C Make complete sentences and add any indefinite articles which are necessary.**

Our neighbours have / such / beautiful garden. He's / professional gardener.

*Our neighbours have such a beautiful garden. He's a professional gardener.*

- 1 I got / such / shock when I heard about Sue's divorce. As / sales manager, she's away from home at least twice / month – perhaps that's the reason.
- 2 Tom is / such / idiot. He had / accident yesterday – he was driving over 120 kilometres / hour!
- 3 As / child, I had to help at home. My parents had / shop and worked six days / week.
- 4 Mary is / atheist and her husband is / strict Muslim.
- 5 We got / real surprise yesterday. Our daughter, who is / student in America, came home for my birthday. It's / half / year since we last saw her.
- 6 I've got / terrible headache. I think I'm getting / cold. It's not surprising – we've had / such / awful weather recently.

**D Translate the following sentences.**

- 1 Eu estou com dor de cabeça. – Você trabalha demais: 50 horas por semana.
- 2 Tivemos um tempo tão maravilhoso ontem. Foi um dia tão bonito!
- 3 Agora que ela se aposentou (as...), minha mãe nunca está em casa.
- 4 Eu tenho uma médica tão boa! O marido dela também é médico.
- 5 Minha prima casou-se com um inglês. Ele fala um bom alemão.



## Peculiaridades gramaticais do inglês americano

O inglês americano (AE) difere em alguns aspectos do inglês britânico (BE).

### Present perfect – simple past (units 7, 8, 10)

- No inglês americano, tanto o present perfect quanto o simple past são usados para relatar algo que tem efeitos no presente. O simple past é frequentemente usado junto com *just*, *already*, *yet*, *ever* e *before*.

AE: Sonia **just phoned**.

BE: Sonia **has just phoned**.

AE: Did Tom **come** home yet?

BE: Has Tom **come** home yet?

AE: Bill **broke** his leg, so he can't drive us.

BE: Bill **has broken** his leg, so he can't drive us.

- No inglês americano, o particípio do verbo *get* é *gotten*.

AE: He's **gotten** much fatter since I last saw him.

BE: He's **got** much fatter since I last saw him.

### mustn't – needn't (unit 24)

- O uso de *needn't* é raro no inglês americano. Em seu lugar, usa-se *don't need to* e *don't have to*.

AE: I **don't have to** / **don't need to** leave before 9:30.

BE: I **needn't** / **don't have to** / **don't need to** leave before 9:30.

### O artigo definido *the* (unit 47)

- *university* e *hospital* são usados com *the* no inglês americano, mesmo quando se fala da função e da frequência (usuários) da instituição.

AE: My father was in **the hospital** for two weeks last year.

BE: My father was in **hospital** for two weeks last year.

- Nomes próprios de pontes (americanas) vêm com *the* no inglês americano.

AE: This is a photo of **the Brooklyn Bridge**.

BE: This is a photo of **London Bridge**.

- No caso de instrumentos musicais, o artigo é às vezes omitido.

AE: Don plays **piano**.

BE: Don plays **the piano**.



## Índice remissivo de A a Z

Aqui você encontra uma lista com termos gramaticais em português e inglês. Esta lista é mais completa do que o sumário, pois ela elenca todas as páginas que tratam de alguma estrutura. Além disso, ela remete a palavras inglesas e portuguesas.

Se você, por exemplo, se lembrar de que "muito(s)/a(s)" tem correspondências diferentes em inglês, mas não souber em que capítulo procurar, este índice o ajudará, pois ele lista "muito(s)/a(s)". Talvez você se lembre também de que há substantivos sem plural no inglês. Será que *advice* é um desses substantivos? Uma olhada no índice vai sanar a dúvida.

Para facilitar a diferenciação entre estruturas e palavras, as palavras estão em ***negrito itálico*** quando se trata de termos portugueses para designar estruturas e em **negrito** quando se trata de termos ingleses para designar estruturas. As palavras inglesas estão em letra normal, e palavras portuguesas, em *itálico*. Os números remetem às páginas do livro. Na página 110, você encontrará uma equivalência dos termos ingleses e portugueses usados no índice.

### A

a lot (of) 86, 94  
a maioria 94  
a/an 88, 100  
ability: expressing ability 50  
abstract nouns, *substantivos abstratos* 98  
acostumar-se 64  
active, voz ativa 46, 48  
adjectives, *adjetivos* 82, 84  
admit 56  
advantage of 58  
advérbios de frequência, adverbs of frequency 6, 10, 12, 86  
advérbios, adverbs 82, 84, 86  
advice 88  
advise 62  
afford 56, 60, 80  
afraid of 58  
after 30, 58

ago 14, 86  
agree 60  
all 96  
all week/... 22, 24  
allow 62  
already 18, 86  
always 6, 18, 22, 24, 86  
ambas 96  
antigamente 42  
any 88, 92  
anybody 92  
anyone 92  
anything 66, 92  
anywhere 92  
apologize for 58  
artigo definido 98  
artigos, articles 98, 100  
as 84, 100  
as soon as 30  
ask 48, 62, 78

at the moment 8  
avoid 56

### B

bad 84  
bad at 58  
be 8, 12, 14, 16, 40, 46, 82  
be able to 50  
become 82  
bed 98  
before 18, 30, 58  
begin 56, 60  
believe 12  
belong to 12  
best 84  
better 84  
binoculars 90  
bread 88  
buy 48



by 38, 46, 48, 58, 98

## C

*cada* 94

can/can't 50, 54, 76

carry on 56

certainly 86

**certainty: expressing certainty** 54

chance of 58

change 80

church 98

cloth 88

clothes 90

cold 100

commands 78

commas: in relative clauses 66, 68

*comparativo* 84

comparison of adjectives and

adverbs 84

complain 80

concentrate 80

*condições prováveis* 72, 74

conditional 70, 72, 74 conditional I

70 conditional II 72 conditional

III 74

consist of 12

*construção objetiva-infinitivo*, object

and infinitive structure 62

• contact clauses 66

continue 56

continuous form 8, 10, 12, 32, 36,  
48

could/couldn't 50, 54, 76

countable nouns 90

## D

damage 88

decide 56, 60, 80

decide against 58 defining relative  
clauses 66, 68

definite article 98

*deixar* 62

depend on 12

describe 48

did/didn't 14, 40

*discurso indireto*, indirect speech

76, 78

dislike 56

do/don't 6, 10, 12, 40, 42, 52, 78

does/doesn't 6, 10, 12, 40, 42, 52,  
78

dream about 58

dress/undress 80

## E

each 94

each other 80

early 82

either 96

enjoy 56

enough 94

*estar acostumado* 64

ever 18, 86

every 94

every day/... 6, 86

everybody 96

everyone 96

everything 66, 96

expect 60

expert 100

explain 48

*expressar certeza* 54

*expressar habilidade* 50

*expressar necessidade* 52

*expressar permissão* 54

*expressar possibilidade* 54

## F

far 84

fast 82

fed up with 58

feel 12, 80, 82

feel like 58

finish 56

fire 98

for 22, 24, 26

force 62

forget 60

frightened of 58

furniture 88

further 84

furthest 84

future continuous 38

future perfect 38

future progressive → future  
continuous

*futuro*, future 34, 36, 38

## G

*gerúndio + preposição*, gerund +  
preposition 58

*gerúndio*, gerund 56, 58

give 48

give up 56

glasses 90

going to 36

good 82

good at 58

*graus dos adjetivos e advérbios* 84

## H

*hábito* 6, 10, 64

habits 6, 10, 64

hair 88

half 100

hard 82

hardly 82

hardly ever 6

hate 12, 56, 60

have 12, 40



have got 40  
 have to/don't have to 52  
 headache 100  
 headphones 90  
 hear 12, 50  
 help 62, 88  
 herself 80  
 himself 80  
 history 98  
 homework 88  
 hope 56, 60  
 hospital 98  
 housework 88  
 how 42  
 how about 58  
 how long 22, 26  
 how many 28, 30, 42  
 how much 28, 30, 42  
 hypothetical conditions 72, 74

## I

idea of 58  
 if 70, 72, 74, 78  
 imagine 56  
*imperativo* 78  
   in questions 42  
   in relative clauses 68  
   in reported speech 76  
 indefinite article 100  
*infinitivo*, infinitive 56, 60, 62  
   passive infinitive 46  
 information 88  
 -ing form 8, 10, 12, 32, 36, 56, 58, 60, 62  
 insist on 58  
 instead of 58  
 interested in 58  
 intonation of question tags 44  
 invite 62  
 itself 80

## J

jeans 90  
 just 8, 18, 86

## K

keep on 56  
 know 12  
 knowledge 88

## L

last week/... 14  
 late 82  
 lately 18  
 learn 60  
 least 84  
 lend 48  
 less 84  
 let 62  
 lie down 80  
 life 98  
 like 12, 56, 60  
 little 84  
 look 12, 82  
 look forward to 58  
 loud 84  
 love (substantivo) 98  
 love (verbo) 12, 56, 60

## M

make 62  
 manage 56, 60  
 many 54, 76  
 mass nouns 88  
 meals 98  
 mean 12, 60  
 meet 80  
*melodia frasal em question tags* 44  
 member 100  
 mention 56

*mesmo(s)/b(s)* 80  
 might 54, 76  
 million 90  
 millionaire 100  
 mind: not mind 56  
 miss 56  
 modal verbs 50, 52, 54  
 most 94  
 mostly 6  
 much 88, 94  
*multo(s)/b(s)* 94  
 must 52  
 mustn't 52  
 myself 80

## N

*nada* 94  
 nature 98  
 necessity: expressing necessity 52  
 need 12  
 needn't 52  
*negação* → simple present, present continuous, simple past etc.  
 negation, negative → simple present, present continuous, simple past etc.  
 neither 96  
*nenhum/a* 94  
 never 6, 18, 24, 86  
 news 90  
*ninguém* 94  
 nobody 94  
*nomes próprios* 98  
 non-countable nouns 88  
 non-defining relative clauses 68  
 none 94  
 normally 6  
 not yet 18  
 nothing 66, 94  
 nouns 88, 90  
 now 8, 86



## O

- object to 58
- objeto*, object: *objeto direto*, *objeto indireto*, direct object, indirect object 48
- obligation: expressing obligation 52
- offer 48, 56, 60
- often 6, 86
- optimist 100
- orações adjetivas explicativas* 68
- orações adjetivas restritivas* 66, 68
- orações adjetivas*, relative clauses 66, 68 *sem pronome relativo* 66
- orações com if*, if-sentences 70, 72, 74
- orações comparativas* 84
- orações condicionais* 76, 78
- ordens: no discurso indireto* 70, 72, 74
- order 62
- ourselves 80

## P

- palavras sinalizadoras* → simple present, simple past, present perfect, present continuous
- pants 90
- paper 88
- particípio* 18
- participle → past participle
- passado*: past continuous 16, 32
- passado*: simple past 14, 16, 20, 22, 30, 32
- past continuous 16, 32
- past continuous 16, 32
- past participle 18
- past perfect 30, 32
- past perfect continuous/progressive 30, 32
- past progressive → past continuous

- past simple → simple past
- pay 48
- peculiaridades ortográficas* 111
- people 98
- perguntas* 40, 42, 44, 78 *com/sem do* 42 *com preposição* 42
- perguntas de "sim/não"* 40, 78
- perguntas no discurso indireto*, indirect questions 78
- perguntas wh-* 42, 78
- perhaps 86
- permission: expressing permission 54
- persuade 62
- pessimist 100
- plan 56, 60
- plural nouns 90
- poder, saber* 50, 54
- police 90
- por* 46, 100
- por meio de* 46
- posição dos advérbios* 36
- position of adverbs 36
- possibility: expressing possibility 54
- practice 56
- precisar* 52
- precisar/dever* 52
- prefer 12, 56, 60
- preposições* 42, 68, 58 *em perguntas* 42 *em orações adjetivas* 68 *com gerúndio* 58
- prepositions 42, 68, 58
- present continuous 8, 10, 12, 32, 36
- present perfect continuous/progressive 26, 28, 32
- present perfect 18, 20, 22, 24, 26, 28, 32
- present simple → simple present
- presente*: present continuous 8, 10, 12, 32, 36 simple present 6, 10, 12, 32, 36
- prison 98

- probably 86
- progress 88
- progressive form → continuous form
- promise 48, 56, 60
- pronomes enfáticos* emphatic pronouns 80
- pronomes reflexivos*, reflexive pronouns 80
- pronomes relativos*, relative pronouns 66, 68
- proof 88
- proper names 98
- pyjamas 90

## Q

- quantidades* 90-92
- quantities 90-92
- que (pronome e conjunção)* 88
- querer* 34
- questions 40, 42, 44, 78 in indirect speech 78 with prepositions 42 with/without *da* 42 yes/no questions 40
- question tags 44
- question words 42
- quick 84
- quite 100

## R

- rarely 6, 86
- real conditions 72, 74
- realize 12
- reason for 58
- recently 18
- recommend 56
- refeições* 98
- refuse 60
- relax 80
- remain 82
- remember 12, 60, 80



remind 62  
report 48  
reported questions → indirect questions  
reported speech → indirect speech  
restrictive relative clauses 66, 68

## S

say 76  
school 98  
scissors 90  
*se (conjunção)* 78  
*se (pronome apassivador)* 46  
*se, quando* 70  
see 12, 50  
seem 12, 60, 82  
-self 80  
sell 48  
-selves 80  
send 48  
short answers 40  
shorts 90  
show 48  
*sich* 80  
signal words → simple present, present continuous, present perfect, simple past  
simple form 6, 10, 12, 32, 36  
simple past 14, 16, 20, 22, 30, 32  
simple present 6, 10, 12, 32, 36  
since 22, 24, 26  
singular nouns 90  
sit down 80  
slow 84  
smell 12, 50, 82  
so 100  
so far 18  
soap 88  
some 88, 92  
somebody 92  
someone 92  
something 66, 92

sometimes 8, 86  
somewhere 92  
soon 86  
sound 82  
speak about 58  
spelling 111  
stairs 90  
start 56, 60  
state verbs 12, 16, 26, 30, 32, 38, 82  
stay 82  
still 86  
stop 56, 60  
*substantivo* 88, 90  
*substantivos* → nouns  
*substantivos contáveis* 90  
*substantivos incontáveis* 88  
*substantivos que só ocorrem no plural* 90  
*substantivos que só ocorrem no singular* 90  
substitute verbs 50, 52  
succeed in 58  
such 100  
suggest 48, 56

## T

tag questions → question tags  
talk about 58  
taste 12, 50, 82  
teach 48  
tell 48, 62, 76  
*ter a permissão* 52, 54  
than 84  
thank for 58  
thanks 90  
that 66, 68, 76  
the 98  
themselves 80  
think 12  
think about/of 58  
this week/... 8, 24  
thought of 58

tights 90  
tired of 58  
toast 88  
today 24, 86  
tomorrow 86  
touch 50  
town 98  
*transposição temporal* 76, 78  
trousers 90  
try 60  
*tudo, todos* 96  
two: the two 96

## U

uncertainty: expressing uncertainty 54  
uncountable nouns 88  
understand 12  
United States 90  
university 98  
unreal conditions 72, 74  
until 30  
used to + infinitive 64  
used to: be used to 58, 64 get used to 64  
usually 6, 86

## V

*verbos com dois objetos* 48  
*verbos com gerúndio* 56, 60  
*verbos com infinitivo* 56, 60  
*verbos de estado* 12, 16, 26, 30, 32, 38, 82  
*verbos de percepção sensorial* 12, 50  
*verbos reflexivos, reflexive verbs* 80  
*verbos substitutivos* 50, 52  
verbs of perception 12, 50  
verbs with gerund 56, 60  
verbs with infinitive 56, 60



verbs with two objects 48

very 8

*vírgulas em orações adjetivas* 66,

68 *no discurso indireto* 76

*voz ativa* 46, 48

*voz passiva, passive* 46, 48 *passive*

*continuous* 48 *passive infinitive*

46

## W

wait 62

want 12, 34, 56, 60

warn 62

wash 80

well 82, 84

what 42

what about 58

what: in exclamations 88

when 14-16, 70

whether 78

which 42, 66, 68

while 16

who 42, 48, 66

whose 66, 68

**wh- questions** 42, 78

why 42

will 34, 38, 40, 70, 76

wish 12

**with gerund** 58

without 58

won't 34, 38, 70

wonder 80

work 88

worry 80

worse 84

worst 84

worth: be worth 58

would 72, 76

would hate 56, 62

would like 56, 62

would love 56

would prefer 56

## Y

**yes/no questions** 40, 78

yesterday 14, 86

yet 18

yourself 80

yourselves 80



## Termos gramaticais ingleses e sua tradução para o português

active	<i>voz ativa</i>	object	<i>objeto</i>
adjective	<i>adjetivo</i>	direct object	<i>objeto direto</i>
comparison of adjectives	<i>graus dos adjetivos</i>	indirect object	<i>objeto indireto</i>
adverb	<i>advérbio</i>	participle	<i>particípio</i>
adverb of frequency	<i>advérbios de frequência</i>	past participle	<i>particípio</i>
comparison of adverbs	<i>graus dos advérbios</i>	passive	<i>voz passiva</i>
position of adverbs	<i>posição dos advérbios</i>	past	
answer	<i>resposta</i>	past perfect	<i>pretérito mais-que-perfeito</i>
short answer	<i>resposta curta</i>	preposition	<i>preposição</i>
article	<i>artigo</i>	present	<i>presente</i>
definite article	<i>artigo definido</i>	progressive form	<i>forma contínua</i>
indefinite article	<i>artigo indefinido</i>	pronoun	<i>pronome</i>
backshifting of tenses	<i>transposição temporal no discurso indireto</i>	emphatic pronoun	<i>pronome enfático</i>
comma	<i>vírgula</i>	reflexive pronoun	<i>pronome reflexivo</i>
conditional	<i>condicional</i>	relative pronoun	<i>pronome relativo</i>
conditional sentence	<i>oração condicional</i>	proper names	<i>nomes próprios</i>
continuous form	<i>forma contínua</i>	quantities	<i>quantidades</i>
clause	<i>oração</i>	question	<i>perguntas</i>
contact clause	<i>oração adjetiva sem pronome relativo</i>	question tag	<i>pergunta de confirmação</i>
relative clause	<i>oração adjetiva</i>	question word	<i>pronome interrogativo</i>
future	<i>futuro</i>	relative clause	<i>oração adjetiva</i>
gerund	<i>gerúndio</i>	non-restricted relative clause	<i>oração adjetiva explicativa</i>
if-sentences	<i>orações com if</i>	restricted relative clause	<i>oração adjetiva restritiva</i>
indirect speech	<i>discurso indireto</i>	reported speech	<i>discurso indireto</i>
infinitive	<i>infinitivo</i>	subject	<i>sujeito</i>
passive infinitive	<i>infinitivo da voz passiva</i>	verb	<i>verbo</i>
negation	<i>negação</i>	irregular verb	<i>verbo irregular</i>
noun	<i>substantivo</i>	modal verb	<i>verbo modal</i>
abstract noun	<i>substantivo abstrato</i>	regular verb	<i>verbo regular</i>
countable noun	<i>substantivo contável</i>	reflexive verb	<i>verbo reflexivo</i>
plural noun	<i>substantivo plural</i>		
singular noun	<i>substantivo singular</i>		
uncountable noun	<i>substantivo incontável</i>		



## Peculiaridades ortográficas

Dependendo da terminação, a ortografia de uma palavra ou de uma terminação pode mudar.

### **-s final muda para -es** (unit 1)

- Palavras terminadas em *-s*, *-ss*, *-sh*, *-ch* ou *-x* recebem um *e* adicional antes do *-s* (plural ou terceira pessoa)  
kiss → kisses, wash → washes, watch → watches, fix → fixes

### **e mudo é omitido** (units 2, 5, 6, 7, 26, 40)

- O *e* mudo na terminação de uma palavra é omitido antes de *-ing*, *-ed*, *-er/-est*.  
make → making, hope → hoping, use → using  
hope → hoped, use → used, smoke → smoked  
white → whiter/whitest, wide → wider/widest

### **Duplicação de consoantes finais** (units 2, 5, 6, 7, 26, 40)

- Quando uma palavra termina em vogal + consoante, a consoante é duplicada antes de *-ing*, *-ed*, *-er/-est* nos seguintes casos:
  - em palavras monossílabas:  
plan → planning, stop → stopping  
plan → planned, stop → stopped  
big → bigger/biggest, hot → hotter/hottest  
Exceção: vogal + w/y/x:  
blow → blowing, pay → paying, fix → fixing  
low → lower/lowest, stay → stayed, fax → faxed
  - em palavras polissílabas cujo acento está na última sílaba:  
beGIN → beGINning, forGET → forGETting, conTROL → conTROLLing  
preFER → preFERRed, conTROL → conTROLLed  
Exceção no inglês britânico:  
travel → travelling, travelled (apesar do acento na primeira sílaba)

### **-y muda para -i** (units 1, 5, 7, 39, 40)

- Quando uma palavra termina em consoante + y, o *-y* muda para *-i* antes das terminações *-s*, *-ed*, *-er/-est*, *-ly* (mas **não** antes de *-ing*).  
hurry → hurries, try → tries  
hurry → hurried, try → tried  
busy → busily, easy → easily, lucky → luckily  
dry → drier/driest, easy → easier/easiest

### **-le é omitido antes de -ly** (unit 39)

- Quando um adjetivo termina em *-le*, o *-le* é omitido antes de *-ly*.  
probable → probably, simple → simply

### **-ic muda para -ical antes de -ly** (unit 39)

- Quando um adjetivo termina em *-ic*, *-ic* + *-ly* a combinação torna-se *-ically*.  
tragic → tragically, automatic → automatically



Exercises 1

- A 1 a 4 b  
2 a 5 a  
3 b 6 a

- B 1 I don't normally go to bed before 10 o'clock.  
2 This book doesn't teach vocabulary.  
3 I don't go to work by train.  
4 We don't usually have an English lesson on Tuesday.  
5 My sisters don't live in Manchester.

- C 1 lives  
2 don't know  
3 always work  
4 don't have  
5 don't smoke  
6 doesn't work

- D 1 No, she doesn't.  
2 Yes, we do.  
3 No, they don't.  
4 Yes, he/she does.  
5 Yes, I do.  
6 No, she doesn't.

Formas divergentes que caracterizam o inglês americano são aqui indicadas entre parênteses. P. ex. "on holiday" (AE: "on vacation").

- 6 What time do you go to bed?  
7 What does this book teach?  
8 How do you go to work?  
9 When do you usually have an English lesson?  
10 Where do your sisters live?

- E 1 do you start  
2 does Paul go  
3 do they have  
4 do you play  
5 do you do

Exercises 2

- A 1 a 4 b  
2 b 5 b  
3 a 6 b

- B 1 I'm not working in Belo Horizonte this week.  
2 The children aren't watching Sesame Street.  
3 The Pope isn't visiting Thailand at the moment.  
4 We are not working from 8 till 3 this week.  
5 I'm not learning English for fun.

- C 1 B: 's studying  
2 B: 'm looking for  
3 B: 'm working  
4 A: Are you waiting  
B: 'm waiting

- D 1 Yes, she is.  
2 Yes, I am.  
3 No, it isn't.  
4 Yes, we are.

- 6 Where are you working this week?  
7 What are the children watching?  
8 Which country is the Pope visiting?  
9 When are you working this week?  
10 Why are you learning English?

- E 1 is Joe studying  
2 is Jane working  
3 are you waiting  
4 are you/we meeting

Exercises 3

- A 1 a 4 a  
2 a 5 a  
3 b 6 a

- B 1 We usually go shopping on Fridays. This week we're going on Saturday.  
2 John always goes to work by car. Today he's going by bus because his car is at the garage.  
3 The children sometimes visit their grandparents. This Sunday they're staying at home.  
4 Jane is going to Australia for Christmas this year. She often spends Christmas abroad.  
5 This week I'm not working on Friday. I never work on Mondays, so that means I can have a long weekend.

- C 1 B: 's staying  
A: is she staying  
2 A: are you going  
B: 'm going, 'm learning  
A: go

- 3 A: Do you normally go  
B: usually spend, 're staying  
A: 're not going

- 4 A: does your brother work  
B: works  
A: isn't working

- D 1 We're not going on holiday (AE: on vacation) this year because we're moving.  
2 It's snowing a lot today. It doesn't normally/usually snow so much in March.  
3 My brother speaks three languages. Now he's learning a fourth - Russian.  
4 What are you doing this weekend? Are you staying at home (AE: staying home)?  
5 This evening we're going to a vegetarian restaurant because our friends don't eat meat.



**Exercises 4**

- A 1 a 4 a  
2 b 5 a  
3 a 6 a
- B 1 looks, is looking 3 think, 'm thinking  
2 see, am seeing 4 are having, have
- C 1 A: do you think 3 A: doesn't seem 5 A: Do you need  
B: prefer B: 'm seeing, 're thinking B: 'm just thinking, don't think  
2 A: does this word mean, 4 A: Do you remember  
don't understand B: 'm having  
B: don't know, think
- D 1 This book doesn't belong to me. Does it belong to you?  
2 I'm thinking about Ann's question. I think we need more time.  
3 Do you have time this evening? - It depends on my work.  
4 Why are you looking at that car? - Because it looks so great. But I think it's too expensive.  
5 Is Tom still having breakfast? - No, I think he is ready. That means we can go.

**Exercises 5**

- A 1 b 4 b  
2 a 5 a  
3 b 6 b
- B 1 I didn't get up early yesterday. 5 What time did you get up yesterday?  
2 This jacket wasn't expensive. 6 How much was your jacket?  
3 Sam didn't go to the USA last year. 7 Where did Sam go last year?  
4 Judy didn't ring Clive last week. 8 Who did Judy ring last week?
- C 1 A: did your son give 3 D 1 did you start E 1 No, she wasn't.  
B: forgot 2 did your coat cost 2 Yes, it did.  
2 A: did you buy 3 Did you see 3 No, I wasn't.  
B: didn't buy, was 4 Did you pay 4 Yes, I did.  
3 A: tried, weren't 5 Yes, he did.  
B: stayed, felt 6 No, we didn't.  
4 A: Did you have  
B: had, didn't do  
5 A: did you get  
B: left, missed

**Exercises 6**

- A 1 a 4 a  
2 b 5 b  
3 b 6 a
- B 1 Which country was the president visiting when he became ill? - He was visiting Spain.  
2 How fast were they driving when the accident happened? - They were driving at 120 km an hour.  
3 What was Helen doing when she met her husband? - She was doing research for her new book.  
4 Who was John speaking to when the secretary walked in? - He was speaking to his boss.  
5 Where were the children playing when the dog attacked them? - They were playing in the park.
- C 1 A: Was it raining, left 4 A: were you going, saw, seemed  
B: got, was shining B: was going, was wearing  
2 A: did you switch 5 A: gave  
B: was watching, wanted B: went, came, was talking  
3 A: Did you phone  
B: forgot, remembered, was waiting



- D 1 When the teacher came into the classroom, the children were playing with a ball.  
 2 I rang/phoned/called (AE: phoned/called) you at eleven. Where were you? – I was sitting in the garden and I didn't hear the phone.  
 3 Did you see Jill yesterday? – Yes, she looked terrible. She was wearing an awful green dress.  
 4 When we arrived in London it was raining and we wanted to go back home.  
 5 This time last week I was lying on the beach.

**Exercises 7**

- A 1 a (AE: beide Sätze möglich) 3 b 5 b  
 2 b 4 b 6 a
- B 1 Paul has been to the USA before. 4 Have you done your homework yet?  
 2 Has your son ever run away from home? (AE: Did you do ...)  
 (AE: Did your son ever run ...)  
 3 I have just finished my homework. 5 We have always wanted to go to Israel.  
 (AE: I just finished ...)  
 6 I have had a lot of work recently.
- C 1 B: 's just heard (AE: just heard) D 1 No, he hasn't. E 1 have you invited  
 2 B: haven't been 2 Yes, I have. 2 has John Grisham written  
 3 A: have they gone out 3 No, they haven't. 3 Have you decided  
 (AE: did they go out) 4 Yes, she has. 4 Have you been  
 B: 've just missed (AE: just missed), 've gone (AE: went)  
 4 A: Has your husband given up 5 Have you ever been  
 B: 's had

**Exercises 8**

- A 1 a 3 a 5 b  
 2 a 4 b 6 b (AE: as duas frases são possíveis)
- B 1 A: Have you ever broken your arm or your leg? 3 A: Have you found your keys yet? (AE: Did you find ...)  
 B: Yes, I broke my leg three years ago. B: Yes, I found them a few minutes ago.  
 2 A: Have you read Robert Goddard's latest book? 4 A: Have you done your homework yet?  
 (AE: Did you read ...)  
 B: Yes, I read it while I was on holiday. B: Yes, I did it yesterday.
- C 1 A: Have you spoken 3 A: 've just booked (AE: just booked)  
 B: phoned, rang, wasn't B: got, haven't decided  
 2 A: Did you learn 4 A: decided, bought, 've never worn  
 B: was, 've forgotten, didn't like, didn't do B: tried, wasn't, gave up
- D 1 John has bought a new car. He bought it last week. It wasn't expensive.  
 2 You can have the book. I've read (AE: I read) it. I read it on holiday; it was very good.  
 3 Have you written (AE: Did you write) all the invitations? – No, I only wrote ten yesterday.  
 4 Has Sandra given (AE: Did Sandra give) us her new telephone number? – No. She sent us a postcard last week, but she forgot the new number.  
 5 Have you heard (AE: Did you hear) from Hilary and George? They've moved! (AE: They moved!) – Really? When did they move?

**Exercises 9**

- A 1 b 4 b B 1 since 4 since  
 2 b 5 b 2 for 5 since  
 3 b 6 a 3 since 6 for
- C 1 A: Have you met 4 A: 've always wanted, Have you  
 B: 've known, since, haven't seen, for ever been  
 2 A: has your son been B: haven't had, for  
 B: Since, 's only written  
 3 A: haven't heard, since, Have you seen 5 A: have you been  
 B: 's been, haven't spoken, for B: 've been, since, 've never had



- D 1 We're in Spain now. We've been here for a week.  
 2 I've had problems with my computer all day. I have / have got a very old computer.  
 3 How long has your son been in Austria? Is he in Salzburg or Vienna?  
 4 I've known Mary all my life. We see each other every month.  
 5 How long have you known your husband? – We've known each other for ages, but we've only been married for two months. We're very happy.

**Exercises 10**

- A 1 b 3 a 5 b  
 2 a 4 b 6 a
- B 1 haven't had 3 haven't had 5 haven't seen  
 2 didn't ring 4 has been
- C 1 A: haven't had, had, got up 3 A: did he die  
 B: opened B: was, went, died, 's been  
 2 A: worked, haven't had 4 A: 've decided, Have you ever been  
 B: made B: took, was
- D 1 It's three o'clock and I've done nothing all day. Yesterday I just sat in the garden all day.  
 2 Twenty years ago we read Hamlet at school, and yesterday I saw the play at the theatre.  
 3 My husband has been in hospital (AE: in the hospital) for a week. He was in hospital (AE: in the hospital) last year too.  
 4 It is Tuesday and my daughter still hasn't rung/called/phoned (AE: called/phoned). She flew to Rome on Saturday and promised to ring/call/phone (AE: call/phone).

**Exercises 11**

- A 1 b 3 a 5 a  
 2 b 4 b 6 b
- B 1 A: How long have you been waiting?  
 B: For 20 minutes.  
 2 A: How long has your wife been learning French?  
 B: Since last October.  
 3 A: How long have your children been travelling round Europe?  
 B: Since the beginning of the summer holidays.  
 4 A: How long have you been looking for a new flat?  
 B: For ages.  
 5 A: How long has it been snowing?  
 B: Since I got up.
- C 1 B: 's been working 3 A: have you been looking for 4 A: has she been  
 2 A: have been living B: 've known 5 A: 've been waiting  
 B: 've been 4 A: 've been staring B: 've been trying  
 B: 've been thinking, 's been A: 've had
- D 1 We live in São Paulo. We've lived / been living there for seven years.  
 2 Do you know Harry? – Yes, we've known each other for years.  
 3 I've got (AE: I have ...) a headache. I've had a headache for three days.  
 4 I work in the export department. How long have you been working here?  
 5 My husband always works hard, but recently he's been working too much.

**Exercises 12**

- A 1 a 3 a 5 a  
 2 b 4 b 6 a
- B 1 have taught, 've been 3 has been talking, has made  
 2 has Jenny been learning, has she had 4 has been washing, has washed
- C 1 are building, have been building, have built 4 've been reading, 'm reading, 've read  
 2 'm writing, 've written, have been writing 5 has played, 's playing, has been playing  
 3 've cut, is cutting, 've been cutting



- D 1 A: have you been doing  
B: 've been helping  
2 A: have you been, haven't seen  
B: 've been watching  
3 A: Do you like  
B: 've only been, seems  
4 A: 's been, have you been speaking  
B: wants

**Exercises 13**

- A 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 a

- B 1 I had already done all the housework when I left home yesterday morning.  
2 We had only been abroad once before we flew to China last year.  
3 The little girl was upset because she had lost her mother in the supermarket.  
4 Joe had almost given up when he finally found a new job.  
5 Our visitors didn't arrive on time because their car broke down / had broken down on the motorway.  
6 They had not been married very long when they decided to get divorced.

- |               |                                |                  |                 |
|---------------|--------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| C 1 had       | 8 woke up                      | 15 went          | 22 were         |
| 2 wrapped up  | 9 hadn't been                  | 16 filled in     | 23 got off      |
| 3 had bought  | 10 had been looking forward to | 17 told          | 24 explained    |
| 4 was packing | 11 landed                      | 18 met / had met | 25 had happened |
| 5 called      | 12 went                        | 19 took          | 26 were walking |
| 6 decided     | 13 had been waiting            | 20 were standing | 27 came         |
| 7 hadn't seen | 14 realized                    | 21 arrived       | 28 had sent     |

**Exercises 14**

- A 1 b 3 a 5 a  
2 a 4 b 6 a

- B 1 I have been trying to phone Sue all day.  
2 We hadn't seen him since we moved.  
3 Bill and Carol had so many arguments when they were travelling round Europe that they decided to come home.  
4 My son is working in the local supermarket at the moment – it's a holiday job. He doesn't like the work much but he needs the money.  
5 When we arrived in Manchester, the sun was shining. Obviously it had been raining because the ground was still wet.  
6 I had not been looking for a new flat for very long before I found one I liked.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| C 1 A: were you going, hadn't realized / didn't realize<br>B: were going | 4 A: lost, decided<br>B: 've been saving                           |
| 2 A: did Tom break<br>B: fell, was cleaning, had already started         | 5 A: wasn't listening<br>B: 've probably been waiting, 've ordered |
| 3 A: were staying, had only been walking<br>B: started                   |  |

- D 1 Paul is learning Spanish. He has been learning it for two months. The course takes place on Mondays.  
2 Have you heard (AE: Did you hear)? Tom's broken (AE: Tom broke) his leg. It happened last week, when he was cleaning the windows.  
3 I had been waiting for an opportunity to wash the car. I was just drying it when I saw the black clouds.  
4 My wife has been looking for a new job since the beginning of the year. When she lost her job she had been working at the company for over 20 years.  
5 We were late yesterday. Our friends had already been waiting for half an hour when we finally arrived.

**Exercises 15**

- A 1 b 3 b 5 b  
2 a 4 a 6 a

- B 1 She will be 18.  
2 My mother will probably come for Christmas.  
3 If you take this bag, I'll carry the heavy suitcase.  
4 The weather forecast says it will rain tomorrow.  
5 I hope we won't be late.  
6 I'll post your letter for you if you like.



- C 1 A: want to  
B: 'll  
2 A: 'll  
B: 'll  
3 A: 'll, won't  
B: 'll, 'll  
4 A: want to, don't want to, 'll  
B: will, 'll  
5 A: want to, will  
B: 'll
- D 1 Have you got / Do you have an umbrella? I'm sure you'll need one later.  
2 Jill wants more money. I think she'll look for a new job soon.  
3 Don't forget to buy stamps. – No, I won't forget!  
4 What film (AE: movie) do you want to see?  
5 I'll help you later. This afternoon I want to buy a birthday present for my aunt. When I'm back, I'll call/ring/phone (AE: call/phone) you.

**Exercises 16**

- A 1 b 3 a 5 b  
2 b 4 a 6 b
- B 1 I'm meeting a friend after work tomorrow.  
2 Does Jane's train arrive at 11.30 or 12.30?  
3 We're not having a holiday this summer. We're staying here.  
4 Here is a list of people we're inviting to our wedding.  
5 The concert starts at 8 o'clock.  
6 What are you doing this weekend?
- C 1 B: 's not going to apply, 's going to travel 4 A: 's going to buy  
2 A: 'll give B: 'll show  
3 A: 're going to be 5 A: 'm going to throw  
B: won't think B: 'll take
- D 1 Be careful! The vase is going to fall over.  
2 I'll drive you if you want. – Thanks, but it's all organized. We're taking / going to take a taxi (AE: cab).  
3 When does the film (AE: movie) start?  
4 Our boss is getting married next week. We're going to buy him an apron as a wedding present.  
5 I'm going for a walk. – Good idea. I'll come with you.

**Exercises 17**

- A 1 a 3 a  
2 a 4 b
- B 1 At 12 o'clock Sam will be cooking lunch. At 1.10 we will be eating. At 2.45 I will have done the washing up.  
2 At 8.30 they will be travelling to school. At 9.30 they will be sitting in their first lesson. By 10.40 they will have had two lessons.  
3 This time tomorrow my cleaning woman will have started work. By 1.30 she will have finished work in my flat. At 1.30 she will be cleaning my neighbour's flat.
- C 1 A: will have arrived 3 A: 'll ring  
B: 'll phone B: 'll be eating  
2 A: will win 4 A: 'll help  
B: 'll be sitting B: 'll have finished
- D 1 Next year my parents will have been married for 40 years.  
2 This time tomorrow I'll be lying on the beach.  
3 Ellen will have arrived by now. It's already after 11.00.  
4 I'll have read (finished) this book by Tuesday. Then you can have it.  
5 I'll call/ring/phone (AE: call/phone) tomorrow. – OK, but not between 7 and 8 o'clock because we'll be eating.

**Exercises 18**

- A 1 a 3 b 5 b  
2 a 4 b 6 a



- B 1 Yes, I do. 4 Yes, they have.  
2 Yes, they are. 5 No, she doesn't.  
3 No, he didn't.
- C 1 Do you know where the post office is, please? – No, I'm sorry, I don't.  
2 Have the children done their homework yet? – Yes, they have.  
3 Did you go shopping yesterday? – Yes, I did.  
4 Is Sally coming tomorrow? – No, I'm afraid she isn't.  
5 Has Paul ever been abroad? – No, he hasn't.
- D 1 Have you seen my car keys? – No, I haven't.  
2 Were you at school (AE: in school) yesterday? – Yes, I was.  
3 Are you going to the cinema (AE: to a movie / the movies) this evening? – Yes, we are.  
4 Can Tom swim? – No, he can't.  
5 Have you got Jane's new address? – Yes, I have. / Do you have Jane's new address? – Yes, I do.

**Exercises 19**

- A 1 a 4 a  
2 b 5 a  
3 b 6 a
- B 1 Who does Jane share a flat with?  
2 How many people came to your birthday party last week?  
3 What wine goes best with beef: red or white?  
4 Who helped you with your homework?  
5 What normally happens at Christmas in your office?
- C 1 did you go with 4 were there  
2 paid for the tickets 5 did you sit next to  
3 did you do 6 did you talk about
- D 1 What happened last week? How did the accident happen?  
2 Who called/phoned/rang (AE: called/phoned) so late yesterday?  
3 Who did you go shopping with yesterday?  
4 Who sent you this postcard?  
5 Who did you write to when you were on holiday?

**Exercises 20**

- A 1 a 4 a  
2 a 5 b  
3 b 6 a
- B 1 haven't I? 4 don't you?  
2 isn't it? 5 didn't he?  
3 do you? 6 aren't I?
- C 1 're not angry, are you? 4 won't be, will you?  
2 's found, hasn't she? 5 couldn't, could you? / can't, can you?  
3 are (playing), aren't they? 6 's moving, isn't he?
- D 1 You're coming tomorrow, aren't you?  
2 That was very expensive, wasn't it?  
3 John didn't call/phone/ring (AE: call/phone) yesterday, did he?  
4 You haven't lived / been living here long, have you?  
5 The book's very interesting, isn't it?

**Exercises 21**

- A 1 b 4 b  
2 b 5 b  
3 a 6 a

- B 1 The Sydney Opera House was designed by a Danish architect.  
 2 The new art gallery will be opened next week by the Queen.  
 3 'Travelled' is spelt with one 'l' in American English.  
 4 Bags must not be taken into the museum.  
 5 A lot of people have been killed in road accidents so far this year.
- C 1 What is made in this factory?  
 2 When will the new airport be built?  
 3 How long ago was the new concert hall opened?
- D 1 How is this word pronounced?  
 2 When was this bridge built?  
 3 Ten people were injured in an accident yesterday.  
 4 A decision will be made next week.  
 5 Telephone cards can be bought almost everywhere.
- 4 How many people have been invited so far?  
 5 How often are elections held in Great Britain?  
 6 When was your car stolen?

**Exercises 22**

- A 1 a 4 b  
 2 b 5 b  
 3 a 6 a
- B 1 wasn't told about the meeting.  
 2 were you paid?  
 3 been explained to you?
- C 1 Has David been offered a place at university yet?  
 2 Why was the flight cancelled yesterday?  
 3 When will the book be published?  
 4 What is being built here?  
 5 Who was this book written by?
- D 1 Our new couch has just been delivered (AE: was just delivered).  
 2 Last week I was offered a job in another department.  
 3 Can I help you? - No, thank you. I'm being served.  
 4 When we arrived at the hotel, our room was (just) being cleaned.  
 5 At the moment everything is being done to solve the problem.
- 4 will be shown on TV.  
 5 must be written this week.  
 6 have been asked to help at the school Christmas party.

**Exercises 23**

- A 1 b 4 b  
 2 b 5 a  
 3 a 6 a
- B 1 were able to 4 'll be able to  
 2 haven't been able to 5 could / were able to  
 3 couldn't / wasn't able to
- C 1 Can you speak 3 Were you able to sleep  
 2 Could you swim 4 Will he be able to play
- D 1 Were you able to work in the garden last weekend or was the weather too bad?  
 2 I can see the mountains from my window.  
 3 I'm sorry, I haven't been able to translate your letter yet.  
 4 Please help me. I can't do it on my own.  
 5 Have you been able to speak to your boss yet?

**Exercises 24**

- A 1 a 4 a  
 2 a 5 b  
 3 b 6 b
- B 1 doesn't have to 4 mustn't  
 2 mustn't 5 mustn't  
 6 doesn't have to



- 3 don't have to                      4 'll have to  
C 1 do we have to                      5 Have you had to  
2 Did you have to  
3 Do you have to  
D 1 I really must (AE: have to) learn more grammar.  
2 Did you have enough pounds on holiday or did you have to change more?  
3 My doctor is good, but you always have to wait.  
4 Do we have to come (with you)?  
5 I don't have/need to/needn't (AE: don't have/need to) work tomorrow.

**Exercises 25**

- A 1 b                      4 a  
2 b                      5 a  
3 a                      6 b  
B 1 a and b                      4 b  
2 b                      5 a and b  
3 a and b  
C 1 B: may                      4 A: may  
2 B: can't                      B: may not  
3 A: can't                      5 A: Can  
B: may                      B: can  
D 1 May/Can I close the window?  
2 I'm sorry, but you can't leave your bicycle here.  
3 Could I call/phone/ring (AE: call/phone) back later? – Of course you can.  
4 The letter could/might be from Paul – he said he'd write to me.  
5 Take an umbrella. It might rain later.

**Exercises 26**

- A 1 b                      4 a  
2 b                      5 b  
3 a                      6 a  
B 1 going to the theatre.                      4 booking early at the new Indian restaurant.  
2 stealing the bike.                      5 seeing Carol at the party.  
3 living in Australia.                      6 going to work by car.  
C 1 A: to do                      4 A: to use  
B: working, to have, to speak                      B: to send  
2 A: turning off                      5 A: to go, to go  
B: going, to watch                      B: having, sleeping  
3 A: driving  
B: getting up, to go  
D 1 I suggest writing a letter to the company.  
2 My neighbour (AE: neighbor) offered to repair my car.  
3 I can't imagine leaving this area, but my wife wants to move.  
4 We would like to reserve a table. We like sitting by the window.  
5 Sue and Tom (have) promised to be punctual / on time.

**Exercises 27**

- A 1 b                      4 b  
2 a                      5 b  
3 b                      6 b  
B 1 to working on Saturdays.                      4 in finding a parking space.  
2 in meeting your new boss.                      5 on helping me.  
3 against buying a new kitchen.                      6 to leaving so early.

- C 1 A: of getting  
B: to pay  
2 A: at remembering, of/about booking,  
to come  
B: going  
3 A: to jogging, to having  
B: to run, taking, on coming  
4 A: buying  
B: to get, about/of buying
- D 1 We (have) bought a boat instead of going on holiday (AE: vacation).  
2 Paul is against buying a new car.  
3 Sue is good at explaining grammar.  
4 I'm afraid of going to the dentist.  
6 We look / are looking forward to seeing you next week.

## Exercises 28

- A 1 b 4 b  
2 b 5 b  
3 a 6 b
- B 1 to go to the bank.  
2 going to Alaska.  
3 smoking?  
4 to have coffee together.  
5 leaving my wallet in the living room.  
6 being very ill when I was ten.
- C 1 A: to drive, to take  
B: taking, to pass  
2 A: leaving  
B: leaving  
3 A: to tell, to pay, to reduce  
B: doing, trying  
4 A: having, working  
B: not having to
- D 1 I must remember to go to the bank.  
2 We've stopped (AE: We stopped) looking for a new flat (AE: apartment). We can't afford to move.  
3 I hate having to work at weekends (AE: on the weekend).  
4 Where is my dictionary? I remember lending it to Tom.

## Exercises 29

- A 1 b 4 a  
2 a 5 a  
3 b 6 b
- B 1 Dave would like me to come to his party.  
2 I expect everyone to be here by nine o'clock.  
3 I warned the children not to play on the road.  
4 Sue persuaded Jim to go to the theatre.  
5 My mother let me borrow her car.  
6 Jane's mother doesn't want her to hitchhike round Europe.
- C 1 me to babysit  
2 me to lend  
3 not to park  
4 me to phone  
5 you do
- D 1 I'm waiting for someone to repair the heating.  
2 Last year I let my daughter go on holiday (AE: vacation) with a friend.  
3 My wife wants me to stay at home (AE: stay home) and look after the children.  
4 We warned you not to invest in this company.  
5 We would like our son to do (AE: take) a language course in the school holidays (AE: during summer vacation).

## Exercises 30

- A 1 b 3 a  
2 a 4 a
- B 1 I'm not used to speaking in front of so many people.  
2 I'm used to working at night.  
3 I'm not used to doing that!  
4 He's not used to drinking so much.  
5 I did, but my wife comes from England so she's used to driving on the left.



- C 1 to going 4 to eating  
2 to work 5 to live  
3 to sleeping
- D 1 Last week I booked my first package holiday.  
2 I always used to say I would never book a package holiday.  
3 When I was younger I never used to book a hotel, just the flight.  
4 I used to go camping.  
5 Once I stayed in a guesthouse, but it was terrible.

**Exercises 31**

- A 1 b 4 b  
2 a 5 a  
3 b 6 b
- B 1 which 4 that  
3 which 6 which
- C 1 (which/that) 4 (which/that)  
2 whose 5 which/that  
3 What 6 that
- D 1 The man who is just going into the bank is my ex-boss.  
2 The people we met at Jane's party called/phoned/rang (AE: called/phoned) yesterday evening.  
3 This evening I'm meeting the friend whose husband is an actor and is often on TV.  
4 I can really recommend the film (AE: movie) we saw at the weekend (AE: on the weekend).  
5 What we have / have got to do is not very easy.

**Exercises 32**

- A 1 b 3 b  
2 b 4 a
- B 1 who  
4 who
- C 1 you were talking to? 4 she applied for?  
2 you wrote to? 5 Jack told us about?  
3 Tom grew up in?
- D 1 Mrs Fox, who always waters our plants when we're on holiday (AE: vacation), is moving.  
2 The friend I was waiting for yesterday had an accident.  
3 David hasn't written us a postcard, which is very unusual.  
4 My boss, who comes from Brazil, got married yesterday.  
5 What's the name of the hotel we stayed in last year?

**Exercises 33**

- A 1 b 3 b  
2 a 4 a
- B 1 If the taxi doesn't come soon, we'll miss our train.  
2 I'm sure you'll feel better if you lie down.  
3 What will you do if your boss doesn't let you take time off?  
4 If I don't get to the bank today, I'll change some money at the airport.  
5 If you get Sarah's birthday present, I'll get the flowers for her.  
6 I'll give you a lift tomorrow if your car's still at the garage.
- C 1 drive, won't be able to 4 buy, will probably have to  
2 will still get, post 5 clean, will probably rain  
3 don't invite, won't come

- D 1 If he doesn't come soon, we'll start without him.  
 2 What will you do if it rains at the weekend (AE: on the weekend)?  
 3 Will you go home early tomorrow if your boss lets you?  
 4 I won't buy the coat if it's not reduced.  
 5 If Tim doesn't win the game tomorrow, he will be very disappointed.

**Exercises 34**

- A 1 b 3 a  
 2 b 4 b
- B 1 If you worked less, you'd have more time for your family.  
 2 If she didn't buy so many, she'd be able to afford more holidays.  
 3 If I were you, I'd apply for it.  
 4 If he was/were more punctual, he would probably get on better with his boss.  
 5 If they waited a couple of months, it wouldn't be so cold.
- C 1 I'm sure it will never happen, but if I lost my passport, I would go to the police.  
 2 If you want to come with us on Saturday, I'll try to get another ticket.  
 3 If I were you, I'd save some money every month.  
 4 If I don't have time to call you this evening, I'll phone you tomorrow – I promise.  
 5 If we didn't have one, I'm sure we'd go on holiday more often.  
 6 I'll give you a lift to the airport tomorrow if your husband can't take you.
- D 1 If I were you, I wouldn't go on Friday.  
 2 I'd help you if I was/were here at the weekend (AE: on the weekend).  
 3 If I didn't have to change twice, I'd go to work by bus.  
 4 My sister would only work part-time if she didn't need the money.  
 5 If my parents didn't live so far away, I'd visit them more often.

**Exercises 35**

- A 1 a 3 b  
 2 b 4 a
- B 1 If we hadn't managed to get a last-minute holiday, we wouldn't have been able to go away.  
 2 I'm sure you would have got (AE: gotten) it if you had applied.  
 3 The workers wouldn't have gone on strike if the management had agreed to pay them more.  
 4 If he had studied harder, he might have passed.  
 5 Would she have taken the job if she had known?
- C 1 If I had listened to the radio in the morning, I would have known about the hold-up.  
 2 If Sally had applied for a visa early enough, she wouldn't have had to cancel her trip.  
 3 If we'd had our mobile phone with us, we could have phoned to say we'd be late.  
 4 If I hadn't taken the risk, I wouldn't have made a lot of money.  
 5 If the children had known that the ice was too thin, they would/might not have gone skating.
- D 1 If I hadn't had so much luggage, I would have come by bus, not by taxi (AE: cab).  
 2 If we'd known how full the exhibition is at weekends (AE: on the weekend), we would have waited until Monday.  
 3 If you hadn't called/phoned/rung (AE: called/phoned) me, I would have overslept.  
 4 The accident wouldn't have happened if Pete hadn't drunk so much.  
 5 Would you have moved if you'd known how noisy it is in this street (AE: on this street)?

**Exercises 36**

- A 1 a 4 b  
 2 b 5 b  
 3 b 6 b
- B 1 could help last week and said Sue might have time too  
 2 had bought a house in the country and they thought it would be better for the children.  
 3 would have to work harder if I wanted to pass the exam.  
 4 'd had two job interviews but he wasn't really interested in either of the jobs.



- C 1 petrol would soon be much cheaper.  
 2 temperatures in June had been lower than in March.  
 3 Bill Gates had decided to give all his money to charity.  
 4 Prince Charles was getting married again.  
 5 scientists had found a cure for Aids.
- D 1 you weren't hungry and you didn't want to go out for dinner.  
 2 you weren't interested in it.  
 3 you'd get white wine.  
 4 couldn't come, had to work.

**Exercises 37**

- A 1 a 3 a  
 2 b 4 a
- B 1 The driving instructor told the student to drive more slowly.  
 2 The doctor told the patient to stay in bed and not to smoke.  
 3 The old lady asked the man to help her.  
 4 The guide told the tourists not to forget their passports.  
 5 The boss asked the secretary to finish the report.
- C 1 her husband was starting a new job that day.  
 2 they were meeting in the Red Lion the following week  
 3 would be there soon and that she wasn't normally late  
 4 they (had) moved the day before and she would let me know as soon as they had a new phone number.
- D 1 if I had got a birthday card from Sue.  
 2 if I knew what time the concert started  
 3 if I could babysit for them the following Saturday.  
 4 where we were meeting the others that evening.  
 5 if he could borrow my bike the following weekend

**Exercises 38**

- A 1 b 4 a  
 2 b 5 a  
 3 b 6 b
- B 1 feels 3 enjoyed ourselves 5 concentrate  
 2 wonder 4 hurt himself
- C 1 yourself 4 each other  
 2 / 5 /, yourself, yourself  
 3 himself 6 /, each other, /
- D 1 I wonder when we'll arrive.  
 2 Paul complained yesterday – he couldn't concentrate because the neighbours (AE: neighbors) were so noisy.  
 3 We're meeting at eight, but I can't remember where.  
 4 I have lots of photos of my children, but none of myself.  
 5 At the weekend (AE: On the weekend) I like to lie down and relax / lying down and relaxing.

**Exercises 39**

- A 1 a 3 b 5 b  
 2 b 4 a 6 a
- B 1 extremely carefully.  
 2 well.  
 3 really fast.  
 4 regularly.  
 5 completely unexpectedly.
- C 1 A: late, lately  
 B: careful, hard  
 A: badly, real  
 2 A: good  
 B: beautiful, hardly  
 A: unusual  
 3 A: unhappy
- B: terribly, suddenly A: well  
 4 A: terrible, badly  
 B: slightly, serious  
 A: bad, dangerous  
 5 A: angry, noisy, loud, properly  
 B: nicely  
 A: noisy, late

- D 1 John felt terrible. He was terribly tired.  
 2 He doesn't usually dream much. One evening he had an unusual dream.  
 3 Suddenly he heard something. A sudden noise woke him up.  
 4 His son and his friends were listening to loud music and talking loudly in the living room.  
 5 "You look very angry," his son said. "Why are you looking at me so angrily?"

**Exercises 40**

- A 1 a 4 b  
 2 a 5 a  
 3 b 6 b

- B 1 harder, than 4 cheapest, best  
 2 as, more expensive than 5 more serious than  
 3 more difficult, than 6 worst  
 4 better  
 C 1 cheaper 5 earlier  
 2 slower 6 more difficult/harder  
 3 larger/bigger

- D 1 The journey to Leeds is long, much longer than I thought.  
 2 You have the same jacket as me.  
 3 This year we are staying in a hotel further away from the beach than last year.  
 4 My sister and I are twins, but she is much thinner than me.  
 5 Last year we had the worst harvest since 1990.

**Exercises 41**

- A 1 a 4 b  
 2 a 5 a  
 3 a 6 a

- B 1 I'm often busy. 4 Jane and I meet every week.  
 2 I probably won't be able to come tomorrow. 5 I didn't go to work yesterday.  
 3 He speaks Spanish very well. 6 We've just bought a small sailing boat.

- C 1 A: [ ] [V] 4 A: [ ] [V]  
 B: [V] [ ] B: [ ] [V]  
 2 A: [V] [ ] 5 A: [ ] [V]  
 B: [ ] [V] B: [ ] [V]  
 3 A: [V] [ ]  
 B: [V] [ ]

- D 1 I've already read (AE: I already read) this book.  
 2 I often go on holiday (AE: on vacation) in winter.  
 3 Mary goes to Manchester every week.  
 4 I saw Tom at the cinema (AE: at the movies / at the movie theater) yesterday.  
 5 Perhaps we will visit our friends in the US next year.

**Exercises 42**

- A 1 a 4 b  
 2 a 5 b  
 3 a 6 a

- B 1 homework~~X~~, progress~~X~~ 3 work~~X~~  
 2 advice~~X~~, information~~X~~ 4 progress~~X~~, help~~X~~, people~~X~~, proof~~X~~  
 C 1 A: looks 3 A: another piece of bread  
 B: it B: such lovely weather  
 2 A: homework 4 A: such good Italian  
 B: information B: spaghetti



- D 1 Do they have / Have they got enough proof that he's the murderer?  
 2 You have made (AE: you made) a lot of progress this year.  
 3 She always buys expensive material.  
 4 My hair is much too long.  
 5 He speaks French well and his knowledge of Spanish isn't bad.

**Exercises 43**

- A 1 b 4 b  
 2 a 5 a  
 3 b 6 b

- B 1 are 3 is 5 have 8 is  
 2 is 4 is 6 are 9 look

- C 1 are 4 is  
 2 were 5 are  
 3 are 6 Are

- D 1 More than three million people are unemployed here. 4 Are these your binoculars?  
 2 The United States has never had (AE: never had) a female president. 5 The police in England aren't armed.  
 3 The right clothes are very important for an interview.

**Exercises 44**

- A 1 b 3 a 5 a  
 2 a 4 a 6 a

- B 1 some, any, anywhere 4 anyone, anyone  
 2 something, anything 5 anything, something  
 3 some, some, any, some

- C 1 A: something 4 A: some  
 B: any B: someone  
 2 A: anyone 5 A: anything  
 B: someone B: any  
 3 A: anywhere  
 B: somewhere, something

- D 1 Is there a (tele)phone box (AE: (tele)phone booth / pay phone) anywhere?  
 2 We have hardly any furniture in our new flat (AE: apartment).  
 3 I haven't learned/learnt (AE: I didn't learn) any grammar this week.  
 4 If there's still some cheese in the fridge, you don't have/need to / needn't (AE: don't have/need to) buy any.  
 5 I haven't heard anything from Susan for two months. Have you heard anything?

**Exercises 45**

- A 1 a 4 b  
 2 b 5 b  
 3 a 6 a

- B 1 most 4 enough work  
 2 None 5 most of the questions  
 3 every ten minutes 6 a lot of people

- C 1 many police 4 enough time, most things  
 2 a lot 5 None of, a lot of  
 3 every match

- D 1 Most people / Most of the people here are from Spain.  
 2 None of us understood the homework.  
 3 I go to the hairdresser's every two months.  
 4 You can leave your bag here. I've got / I have enough room.  
 5 She knows a lot about politics.

Exercises 46

- A 1 a 4 b  
2 a 5 a  
3 a 6 a
- B 2 all ~~the~~ Brazilian children  
3 ~~the~~ both cars  
6 ~~the~~ both girls
- C 1 Both my brothers / My brothers both live abroad.  
2 We all work really hard in our office.  
3 We all left the building when the fire alarm rang.  
4 My sister and I both moved last year.  
5 We've all passed the exam.  
6 My mother and father both / Both my mother and father have problems with their health.
- D 1 I would do anything to meet him.  
2 Both (of) my neighbours (AE: neighbors) are / My neighbours (AE: neighbors) are both very friendly.  
3 All (of) my friends / My friends all wanted to help. Everybody came.  
4 We both / Both of us bought a new car last year.  
5 Which suitcase do you want? You can have either – the red one or the black one.

Exercises 47

- A 1 b 4 b  
2 b 5 a  
3 a 6 b
- B 1 ~~the~~ work, ~~the~~ bed  
3 in ~~the~~ hospital (AE: in the hospital)  
4 ~~the~~ Oxford University  
5 ~~the~~ Downing Street  
6 ~~The~~ music, ~~the~~ classical music
- C 1 Turkey, breakfast, dinner  
2 university, the United States, the Rocky Mountains  
3 people, Trafalgar Square  
4 by car, the train, lunch  
5 Life, hospital (AE: the hospital)
- D 1 Is Mont Blanc in Switzerland?  
2 British cuisine is better than people think.  
3 I love music. I play the guitar (AE: I play guitar) every day.  
4 I never take the bus – I always go to work by car.  
5 My neighbour is in prison. Life is hard there.

Exercises 48

- A 1 b 4 a  
2 b 5 b  
3 a 6 b
- B 1 A: such a lovely day  
B: such a long way, half an hour  
2 A: a member  
B: once a week  
3 A: As a student, a drinker  
B: an alcoholic, an anarchist
- C 1 I got such a shock when I heard about Sue's divorce. As a sales manager, she's away from home at least twice a month – perhaps that's the reason.  
2 Tom is such an idiot. He had an accident yesterday – he was driving over 120 kilometres an hour!  
3 As a child, I had to help at home. My parents had a shop and worked six days a week.  
4 Mary is an atheist and her husband is a strict Muslim.  
5 We got a real surprise yesterday. Our daughter, who is a student in America, came home for my birthday. It's half a year since we last saw her.  
6 I've got a terrible headache. I think I'm getting a cold. It's not surprising – we've had such awful weather recently.
- D 1 I have / have got a headache! – You work too much: 50 hours a week.  
2 We had such great weather yesterday. The day was so nice! / It was such a nice day!  
3 As a pensioner (AE: retiree) my mother is never at home (AE: never home)!  
4 I have such a good doctor. Her husband is a doctor too.  
5 My cousin (has) married an Englishman. He speaks good German.



## Irregular Verbs (verbos irregulares)

be	was/were	been	<i>ser</i>
beat	beat	beat	<i>bater, vencer</i>
become	became	become	<i>tornar-se</i>
begin	began	begun	<i>começar</i>
bite	bit	bitten	<i>morder</i>
blow	blew	blown	<i>soprar</i>
bring	brought	brought	<i>trazer</i>
break	broke	broken	<i>quebrar</i>
build	built	built	<i>construir</i>
burn	burnt / burned	burnt / burned	<i>queimar, arder</i>
buy	bought	bought	<i>comprar</i>
catch	caught	caught	<i>pegar</i>
choose	chose	chosen	<i>escolher</i>
come	came	come	<i>vir</i>
cost	cost	cost	<i>custar</i>
cut	cut	cut	<i>cortar</i>
dig	dug	dug	<i>cavar</i>
do	did	done	<i>fazer</i>
draw	drew	drawn	<i>puxar, desenhar</i>
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed	<i>sonhar</i>
drink	drank	drunk	<i>beber</i>
drive	drove	driven	<i>dirigir</i>
eat	ate	eaten	<i>comer</i>
fall	fell	fallen	<i>cair</i>
feed	fed	fed	<i>alimentar</i>
feel	felt	felt	<i>santir</i>
find	found	found	<i>encontrar</i>
fly	flew	flown	<i>voar</i>
forget	forgot	forgotten	<i>esquecer</i>
get	got	got	<i>receber</i>
give	gave	given	<i>dar</i>
go	went	gone	<i>andar, ir</i>
have	had	had	<i>ter</i>
hear	heard	heard	<i>ouvir</i>
hide	hid	hidden	<i>esconder</i>
hit	hit	hit	<i>bater, atingir</i>
hold	held	held	<i>segurar</i>
hurt	hurt	hurt	<i>machucar</i>
keep	kept	kept	<i>manter</i>
know	knew	known	<i>conhecer</i>
lay	laid	laid	<i>deitar</i>
lead	led	led	<i>guiar</i>
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	<i>estudar, aprender</i>
leave	left	left	<i>deixar</i>
lend	lent	lent	<i>emprestar</i>
let	let	let	<i>deixar, permitir</i>
lie	lay	lain	<i>estar deitado</i>
light	lit	lit	<i>acender</i>
lose	lost	lost	<i>perder</i>

## Irregular Verbs (verbos irregulares)

make	made	made	<i>fazer</i>
mean	meant	meant	<i>significar</i>
meet	met	met	<i>encontrar</i>
pay	paid	paid	<i>pagar</i>
put	put	put	<i>colocar</i>
read	read	read	<i>ler</i>
ride	rode	ridden	<i>cavalgar</i>
ring	rang	rung	<i>telefonar</i>
run	ran	run	<i>correr</i>
say	said	said	<i>dizer</i>
see	saw	seen	<i>ver</i>
sell	sold	sold	<i>vender</i>
send	sent	sent	<i>enviar</i>
set	set	set	<i>pôr</i>
shake	shook	shaken	<i>sacudir</i>
shine	shone	shone	<i>brilhar</i>
shoot	shot	shot	<i>atirar</i>
show	showed	shown/showed	<i>mostrar</i>
shut	shut	shut	<i>fechar</i>
sing	sang	sung	<i>canter</i>
sink	sank	sunk	<i>afundar</i>
sit	sat	sat	<i>estar sentado</i>
sleep	slept	slept	<i>dormir</i>
smell	smelt/smelled	smelt/smelled	<i>cheirar</i>
speak	spoke	spoken	<i>falar</i>
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled	<i>soletrar</i>
spend	spent	spent	<i>gastar</i>
spit	spat	spat	<i>cuspir</i>
spoil	spoilt/spoiled	spoilt/spoiled	<i>estragar</i>
stand	stood	stood	<i>ficar em pé</i>
steal	stole	stolen	<i>furtar</i>
stick	stuck	stuck	<i>colar</i>
strike	struck	struck	<i>bater</i>
swim	swam	swum	<i>nadar</i>
take	took	taken	<i>pegar</i>
teach	taught	taught	<i>ensinar</i>
tell	told	told	<i>contar</i>
think	thought	thought	<i>pensar, achar</i>
throw	threw	thrown	<i>atirar, jogar</i>
understand	understood	understood	<i>compreender</i>
wake	woke	woken	<i>acordar</i>
wear	wore	worn	<i>usar (roupa)</i>
win	won	won	<i>ganhar</i>
write	wrote	written	<i>escrever</i>



# GRAMMAR NO PROBLEM

## UMA GRAMÁTICA DO INGLÊS ATUAL COM EXERCÍCIOS E RESPOSTAS

Todas as estruturas necessárias para **aprender**,  
**exercitar** e **revisar** o Inglês essencial.

São **48 unidades**, estruturadas em página dupla – na  
página par, as **explicações**; na ímpar, os  
**exercícios**.

No final de cada unidade, um **resumo** vem **facilitar** e  
**fixar** em poucas linhas o que se aprendeu.

Os **exemplos** e **exercícios** (com respostas no final)  
são de **fácil compreensão** e têm léxico  
cuidadosamente selecionado.

Testado e aprovado, *Gramática Prática de Inglês* possibilita treinar  
situações reais de uso do Inglês.

As respostas dos exercícios podem ser anotadas no próprio livro.

Para ser usado tanto em **sala de aula** como na  
**autoaprendizagem**.

